# Contents

## 1 General Information
  1.1 Introduction  1  
  1.2 Circuit Structure  3  
  1.3 Software/Hardware Requirement  4  
  1.4 Installing the Program  4  
  1.5 Simulating a Circuit  4  
  1.6 Simulation Control  4  
  1.7 Component Parameter Specification and Format  8  

## 2 Circuit Schematic Design
  2.1 PSIM Environment  11  
  2.2 Creating a Circuit  14  
  2.3 File Menu  15  
  2.4 Edit Menu  15  
  2.5 View Menu  17  
  2.6 Design Suites Menu  17  
  2.7 Subcircuit Menu  18  
    2.7.1 Creating Subcircuit - In the Main Circuit  19  
    2.7.2 Creating Subcircuit - Inside the Subcircuit  19  
    2.7.3 Connecting Subcircuit - In the Main Circuit  20  
    2.7.4 Other Features of the Subcircuit  21  
      2.7.4.1 Passing Variables from the Main Circuit to Subcircuit  21  
      2.7.4.2 Customizing the Subcircuit Image  22  
      2.7.4.3 Including Subcircuits in the PSIM Element List  22  
  2.8 Elements Menu  23  
  2.9 Simulate Menu  23  
  2.10 Options Menu  26  
    2.10.1 Setting Option  27  
    2.10.2 Set Path Option  29  
    2.10.3 Customizing Toolbars and Keyboards  30  
  2.11 Utilities Menu  31  
  2.12 Managing the PSIM Library  32  
    2.12.1 Creating a Secondary Image  33  
    2.12.2 Adding a New Subcircuit Element into the Library  34  
    2.12.3 Adding a New DLL Element into the Library  35  
  2.13 Creating a Symbol Library  37  

## 3 Waveform Processing in SIMVIEW
  3.1 File Menu  39  
  3.2 Edit Menu  40  
  3.3 Axis Menu  40  
  3.4 Screen Menu  41  
  3.5 Measure Menu  45  
  3.6 Analysis Menu  45  
  3.7 View Menu  46  
  3.8 Option Menu  47
4 Power Circuit Components

4.1 Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor Branches 49
   4.1.1 Individual Resistor 49
   4.1.2 Individual Inductor 50
   4.1.3 Individual and Electrolytic Capacitors 50
   4.1.4 Combined R-L-C Branch 51
   4.1.5 3-Phase R, L, C, and Combination Branches 52
   4.1.6 3-Phase AC Cable 52
   4.1.7 Rheostat 53
   4.1.8 Saturable Inductor 53
   4.1.9 Saturable Inductor (2) 54
   4.1.10 Coupled Inductors 55
   4.1.11 Nonlinear Elements 56

4.2 Switching Devices 57
   4.2.1 Diode 58
   4.2.2 LED 59
   4.2.3 Zener Diode and DIAC 60
   4.2.4 Thyristor and TRIAC 61
   4.2.5 Bipolar Junction Transistor 62
      4.2.5.1 Ideal BJT 62
      4.2.5.2 3-State BJT 63
   4.2.6 MOSFET 64
      4.2.6.1 Ideal MOSFET 64
      4.2.6.2 Level-1 MOSFET 65
      4.2.6.3 Level-2 MOSFET 66
   4.2.7 IGBT 67
      4.2.7.1 Ideal IGBT 67
      4.2.7.2 Level-2 IGBT 68
   4.2.8 IGBT-RB 68
   4.2.9 GTO 69
   4.2.10 Bi-Directional Switches 69
   4.2.11 Switch Gating Block 70
   4.2.12 Single-Phase Switch Modules 71
   4.2.13 3-Phase Switch Modules 72

4.3 Transformers 74
   4.3.1 Ideal Transformer 74
   4.3.2 Single-Phase Transformers 75
   4.3.3 3-Phase Transformers 76
   4.3.4 3-Phase Transformer with Saturation 79

4.4 Magnetic Elements 80
   4.4.1 Winding 80
   4.4.2 Leakage Flux Path 81
   4.4.3 Air Gap 81
   4.4.4 Linear Core 82
   4.4.5 Saturable Core 83

4.5 Other Elements 84
   4.5.1 Operational Amplifier 84
      4.5.1.1 Ideal Operational Amplifier 84
      4.5.1.2 Non-Ideal Operational Amplifier 85
   4.5.2 TL431 Shunt Regulator 86
4.5.3 Opto-Coupler 86
4.5.4 dv/dt Block 87
4.5.5 Relays 88

4.6 Motor Drive Module 89
4.6.1 Reference Direction of Mechanical Systems 89
4.6.2 DC Machine 95
4.6.3 Induction Machines 91
4.6.4 Induction Machine with Saturation 93
4.6.5 DC Machine 95
4.6.6 Synchronous Machine with External Excitation 101
4.6.7 Permanent Magnet Synchronous Machine 103
4.6.8 Permanent Magnet Synchronous Machine with Saturation 106
4.6.9 Switched Reluctance Machine 108
4.6.10 Nonlinear Switched Reluctance Machine 110
4.6.11 Motor Control Blocks 111
  4.6.11.1 Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere Control 111
  4.6.11.2 Field Weakening Control 112

4.7 MagCoupler Module 116
4.7.1 MagCoupler-DL Block 116
4.7.2 MagCoupler Block 117

4.8 MagCoupler-RT Module 120

4.9 Mechanical Elements and Sensors 124
4.9.1 Mechanical Elements and Sensors 124
  4.9.1.1 Constant-Torque Load 124
  4.9.1.2 Constant-Power Load 124
  4.9.1.3 Constant-Speed Load 125
  4.9.1.4 General-Type Load 126
  4.9.1.5 Externally-Controlled Load 126
4.9.2 Gear Box 127
4.9.3 Mechanical Coupling Block 127
4.9.4 Mechanical-Electrical Interface Block 127
4.9.5 Speed/Torque Sensors 129
4.9.6 Position Sensors 130
  4.9.6.1 Absolute Encoder 131
  4.9.6.2 Incremental Encoder 131
  4.9.6.3 Resolver 131
  4.9.6.4 Hall Effect Sensor 132

4.10 Thermal Module 133
4.10.1 Diode Thermal Model 133
  4.10.1.1 Diode Device in Database 133
  4.10.1.2 Diode Loss Calculation 134
4.10.2 IGBT Thermal Model 136
  4.10.2.1 IGBT Device in Database 136
  4.10.2.2 IGBT Loss Calculation 138
4.10.3 RB-IGBT Thermal Model 140
  4.10.3.1 RB-IGBT Device in Database 140
  4.10.3.2 RB-IGBT Loss Calculation 141
4.10.4 MOSFET Thermal Model 142
  4.10.4.1 "MOSFET (database)" Device in Database 142
  4.10.4.2 "MOSFET (Eon) (database)" Device in Database 144
  4.10.4.3 MOSFET Loss Calculation 146
4.10.5 Inductor Thermal Model 149
4.10.5.1 Inductor in Database 149
4.10.5.2 Inductor Loss Calculation 149
4.10.6 Device Database Editor 150
4.10.7 Adding a Switching Device to Database 151

4.11 **Renewable Energy Module** 156

4.11.1 Solar Modules 156
  4.11.1.1 Solar Module - Functional Model 156
  4.11.1.2 Solar Module - Physical Model 157
  4.11.1.3 Solar Module - cSi and Thin-File Models 159

4.11.2 Wind Turbine 162
4.11.3 Lithium-Ion Battery Model 164
4.11.4 Battery (Lookup Table) Model 166
4.11.5 Battery (Lookup Table SOC) Model 167
4.11.6 Battery (Lookup Table Q) Model 169
4.11.7 Ultracapacitor Model 170

5 **Control Circuit Components**

5.1 Transfer Function Blocks 173
  5.1.1 Proportional Controller 174
  5.1.2 Integrator 174
  5.1.3 Differentiator 176
  5.1.4 Proportional-Integral Controller 176
  5.1.5 Single-Pole Controller 177
  5.1.6 Modified PI Controller 177
  5.1.7 Type-3 Controller 178
  5.1.8 Built-in Filter Blocks 179

5.2 Computational Function Blocks 180
  5.2.1 Summer 180
  5.2.2 Multiplier and Divider 180
  5.2.3 Square-Root 181
  5.2.4 Exponential/Power/Logarithmic Functions 181
  5.2.5 Root-Mean-Square 181
  5.2.6 Absolute and Sign Functions 182
  5.2.7 Trigonometric Functions 182
  5.2.8 Fast Fourier Transform 182
  5.2.9 Maximum/Minimum Function 183
  5.2.10 MOD Function 184

5.3 Other Function Blocks 184
  5.3.1 Comparator 184
  5.3.2 Hysteresis Comparator 184
  5.3.3 Limiters 185
  5.3.4 Gradient (dv/dt) Limiter 185
  5.3.5 Trapezoidal and Square Blocks 186
  5.3.6 Sampling/Hold Block 186
  5.3.7 Round-Off Block 187
  5.3.8 Time Delay Blocks 187
  5.3.9 Multiplexer 188
  5.3.10 THD Block 189
  5.3.11 Space Vector PWM 190

5.4 Logic Components 191
  5.4.1 Logic Gates 191
  5.4.2 Set-Reset Flip-Flop 191
5.4.3 J-K Flip-Flops 192
5.4.4 D Flip-Flops 192
5.4.5 Monostable Multivibrator 193
5.4.6 Bit Shift 193
5.4.7 Pulse Width Counter 193
5.4.8 Up/Down Counter 194
5.4.9 A/D and D/A Converters 194

5.5 Digital Control Module 196
5.5.1 Motor Control Blocks 196
  5.5.1.1 Ramp Control 196
  5.5.1.2 Ramp Generator 197
  5.5.1.3 Sliding Mode Observer (PMSM) 197
  5.5.1.4 Speed Calculator 198
  5.5.1.5 Encoder 198
5.5.2 Zero-Order Hold 199
5.5.3 Z-Domain Transfer Function Block 200
  5.5.3.1 Integrator 201
  5.5.3.2 Differentiator 202
  5.5.3.3 Digital PI Controller 202
  5.5.3.4 Digital PID Controller with Reset 203
  5.5.3.5 Digital Filters 204
5.5.4 Unit Delay 206
5.5.5 Quantization Blocks 207
5.5.6 Circular Buffers 209
5.5.7 Convolution Block 210
5.5.8 Memory Read Block 210
5.5.9 Data Array 211
5.5.10 Stack 211
5.5.11 Multi-Rate Sampling System 212

5.6 SimCoupler Module 213
5.6.1 Set-up in PSIM and Simulink 213
5.6.2 Solver Type and Time Step Selection in Simulink 214

5.7 CosiMate Links 217

5.8 Design Suite Blocks 217
5.8.1 Torque Control (PMSM) 217
5.8.2 Dynamic Torque Limit Control (PMSM) 218
5.8.3 Dynamic Torque Limit Control (Nonlinear PMSM) 219
5.8.4 Voltage Control (PMSM) 220
5.8.5 DC-DC Charging Control 221
5.8.6 DC-DC Discharging Control 222
5.8.7 DC-DC Regeneration Control 223

6 Other Components
6.1 Switch Controllers 225
  6.1.1 On-Off Switch Controller 225
  6.1.2 Alpha Controller 226
  6.1.3 PWM Lookup Table Controller 227
6.2 Sensors 228
6.3 Probes, Meters, and Scopes
  6.3.1 Probes and Meters 228
  6.3.2 Voltage/Current Scopes 231
1.1 Introduction

PSIM¹ is a simulation software specifically designed for power electronics, motor drives, and power conversion systems. With fast simulation speed and friendly user interface, PSIM provides a powerful simulation environment to meet your simulation and development needs.

PSIM includes the basic package, as well as the following add-on options:

**Motor Drive Module:** Built-in electric machine models and mechanical load models for motor drive system studies.

**Digital Control Module:** Discrete library elements such as zero-order hold, z-domain transfer function blocks, quantization blocks, digital filters, for digital control system analysis.

**SimCoupler Module:** Interface between PSIM and Matlab/Simulink² for co-simulation.

**Thermal Module:** Library elements and functions calculate semiconductor device losses and inductor losses.

**Renewable Energy Module:** Library elements, such as solar module, wind turbine, battery, and ultra-capacitor models, for renewable energy applications.

**SPICE Module:** SPICE engine, powered by CoolSPICE⁸ from CoolCAD Electronics LLC., for SPICE simulation. It also includes the function to link to LTspice⁹.

**SimCoder³ Module:** Function for automatic code generation.

**F2833x Target:** Library elements for automatic code generation for TI F2833x series DSP.

**F2803x Target:** Library elements for automatic code generation for TI F2803x series DSP.

**F2802x Target:** Library elements for automatic code generation for TI F2802x series DSP.

**F2806x Target:** Library elements for automatic code generation for TI F2806x series DSP.

**PE-Expert4 Target:** Library elements for automatic code generation for Myway PE-Expert4 hardware platform.

**PIL Module:** Interface between PSIM and TI DSP hardware boards for Processor-In-the-Loop (PIL) simulation. It also includes the function block to support TI’s InstaSPIN motor control algorithm.

**MagCoupler Module:** Interface between PSIM and the electromagnetic field analysis software J MAG⁴ for co-simulation.

**MagCoupler-RT Module:** Link between PSIM and J MAG-RT⁴ data files.

---

1. PSIM and SIMVIEW are registered trademarks of, and are copyright by, Powersim Inc., 2001-2018
2. Matlab and Simulink are registered trademarks of the MathWorks, Inc.
3. SimCoder is a trademark of Powersim Inc., and is copyright by Powersim Inc., 2008-2018
4. J MAG and J MAG-RT are copyright by JSOL Corporation, 1997-2018
5. ModCoupler and SmartCtrl are copyright by Universidad Carlos III de Madrid, 2011-2018
6. ModelSim is a registered trademark of Mentor Graphics Co.
7. CosiMate is copyright by ChiasTek Inc., 2010-2018
8. CoolSPICE is copyright by CoolCAD Electronics LLC., 2011-2018
9. LTspice is copyright by Linear Technology Co., 1998-2018
**ModCoupler\(^5\) Modules:** Interface between PSIM and ModelSim\(^6\) for co-simulation. There are two versions of the interface: ModCoupler-VHDL that supports VHDL code, and ModCoupler-Verilog that supports Verilog code.

**Motor Control Design Suite:** Pre-built templates for induction motor and linear/nonlinear PMSM drives.

**HEV Design Suite:** Pre-built templates for hybrid electric vehicle (HEV) powertrain system design.

In addition, a link is provided between PSIM and CosiMate\(^7\), a co-simulation framework that supports various software such as Matlab/Simulink, ModelSim, Saber (from Synopsys), Easy5 and Adams (from MSC Software), Inventor (from Autodesk), AMESim (from LMS), GT-Power (from Gamma Technologies), etc. Through CosiMate, PSIM can perform co-simulation with these software. For more information on CosiMate, visit www.chiastek.com.

Also, PSIM links with the software SmartCtrl\(^5\) for control loop design. SmartCtrl is designed specifically for power converter applications. For more information on SmartCtrl, refer to *SmartCtrl User’s Guide*.

With these product lineup, Powersim provides a complete platform from design to simulation, to hardware implementation. The overall environment is shown in the figure below.

The PSIM simulation environment consists of the schematic program PSIM, two simulator engines (one PSIM engine and the other SPICE engine), and the waveform processing program SIMVIEW\(^1\). The simulation process is illustrated as follows.

This manual covers both PSIM and all add-on Modules and subjects except the ones listed below which are covered by these documents respectively:
The organization of this manual is as follows:

Chapter 1: PSIM circuit structure, software/hardware requirement, and parameter format.
Chapter 2: PSIM environment and how to build a PSIM schematic.
Chapter 3: Simulation result display and analysis with Simview.
Chapter 4 through 7: Components in PSIM element library.
Chapter 8: Error/warning messages

1.2 Circuit Structure

A circuit is represented in PSIM in four blocks: power circuit, control circuit, sensors, and switch controllers. The figure below shows the relationship between these blocks.

![Circuit Diagram]

The power circuit consists of switching devices, RLC branches, transformers, and coupled inductors. The control circuit is represented in block diagram. Components in s-domain and z-domain, logic components (such as logic gates and flip flops), and nonlinear components (such as multipliers and dividers) are used in the control circuit. Sensors are used to measure power circuit quantities and pass them to the control circuit. Gating signals are then generated from the control circuit and sent back to the power circuit through switch controllers to control switches.
1.3 Software/Hardware Requirement

PSIM runs in Microsoft Windows 7/8/10 on personal computers. A minimum of 1GB RAM memory is needed.

1.4 Installing the Program

A quick installation guide is provided in the flier “PSIM - Quick Guide” and on the USB memory stick.

Some of the files in the PSIM directory are:

- **PSIM.exe**  
  PSIM circuit schematic editor
- **SIMVIEW.exe**  
  PSIM waveform processing program
- **PcdEditor.exe**  
  Device database editor
- **SetSimPath.exe**  
  Program to set up the SimCoupler Module

File extensions used in PSIM are:

- *.psimsch  
  PSIM schematic file
- *.psimpjt  
  PSIM project file
- *.lib  
  PSIM library file
- *.fra  
  PSIM ac analysis output file (text)
- *.dev  
  Device database file
- *.txt  
  Simulation output file in text format
- *.smv  
  Simulation output file in binary format
- *.net; *.cir  
  SPICE netlist files

1.5 Simulating a Circuit

To simulate the buck converter circuit “buck.psimsch” in "examples\dc-dc":

- Start PSIM. From the **File** menu, choose **Open** to load the file “buck.psimsch”.
- From the **Simulate** menu, choose **Run PSIM** to start the simulation. Simulation results will be saved to File “buck.smv”.
- By default, **Auto-run SIMVIEW** is selected in the **Options** menu. SIMVIEW will be launched automatically. In SIMVIEW, select curves for display. If this option is not selected, from the **Simulate** menu, choose **Run SIMVIEW** to start SIMVIEW.

1.6 Simulation Control

The Simulation Control element defines parameters and settings related to simulation.

To place the Simulation Control in the schematic, go to the **Simulate** menu, and select **Simulation Control**.

**Image:**

![Simulation Control Diagram](image)

There are four tabs in the Simulation Control dialog:

- **PSIM**: Define parameters for PSIM transient simulation.
- **SPICE**: Define the analysis type and parameters for SPICE simulation. For more detailed information, please refer to *SPICE User’s Manual.*
SimCoder: Define the hardware for SimCoder simulation and automatic code generation. For more detailed information, please refer to *SimCoder User’s Manual*.

Color: Define the color of the Simulation Control image. The default color is blue.

**PSIM Tab:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time Step</td>
<td>Simulation time step, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Time</td>
<td>Total simulation time, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free Run</td>
<td>When the Free Run checkbox is not checked, the simulation will run up to the Total Time and then stop. But when it is checked, the simulation will run in the free-run mode and it will keep on running until manually stopped. In the free-run mode, voltage/current scopes can be used to monitor and display voltages and currents in the middle of the simulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Time</td>
<td>Time from which simulation results are saved to the output file. No output is saved before this time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Step</td>
<td>Print step. If it is set to 1, for example, every data point will be saved to the output file. If it is set to 10, only one out of 10 data points will be saved. This helps to reduce the output file size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the LOAD function. If the flag is 1, the previous simulation values (saved by setting the <strong>Save Flag</strong>) will be loaded from a file (with the “.ssf” extension) as the initial conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the SAVE function. If the flag is 1, values at the end of the current simulation will be saved to a file with the “.ssf” extension.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In PSIM, the simulation time step is fixed throughout the simulation. In order to ensure accurate simulation results, the time step must be chosen properly. The factors that limit the time step in a circuit include the switching period, widths of pulses or waveforms, and intervals of transients. It is recommended that the time step should be at least one magnitude smaller than the smallest of the above.

Also, an interpolation technique is implemented which will calculate the switching instants more accurately. With this technique, the error due to the misalignment of switching instants and discrete simulation points is significantly reduced. It is possible to simulate with a large time step while still maintaining accurate results.

The allowable maximum time step is automatically calculated in PSIM. It is compared with the time step set by the user, and the smaller value of the two will be used in the simulation.

With the SAVE and LOAD functions, the circuit voltages, currents and other quantities can be saved at the end of a simulation session, and loaded back as the initial conditions for the next simulation session. This provides the flexibility of running a long simulation in several shorter stages with different time steps and parameters. Components values and parameters of the circuit can be changed from one simulation session to the other. The circuit topology, however, must remain the same.
There are 3 types of analysis in SPICE: Transient, AC, and DC. Simulation parameters of different analysis types are described below. For more information on SPICE simulation, please refer to the SPICE User Manual.

For Transient Analysis:

- **Use Initial Conditions**: If this box is checked, element initial conditions will be used, and the "UIC" option will be added to the .tran command. **Note: This setting also affects AC and DC analysis.**
- **Time Step**: Suggested computing increment and plotting increment Tstep, in sec. It can be left undefined (blank).
- **Max Step**: Maximum step size Tmax that SPICE uses, in sec. By default, the program uses either Tstep or (Tend-Tstart)/50, whichever is smaller. Tmax is useful when one wishes to guarantee a computing interval not greater than Tmax. It can be left undefined.
- **Start Time**: Initial time Tstart, in sec. Transient analysis always begins at time zero. In the interval from zero to Tstart, the circuit is simulated, but no outputs are stored. This parameter is equivalent to Print Time in PSIM simulation parameters. It can be left undefined.
- **End Time**: Final simulation time Tend, in sec.

Three integration methods can be selected for SPICE simulation:
- **Trapezoidal**: Trapezoidal Rule method.
- **Modified Trapezoidal**: Modified Trapezoidal Rule method.
- **Gear**: Gear method.

**Order**: The order of the integration method. For Trapezoidal, the order can be 1 or 2. For Gear, the order can be 2 to 6. **Note: This setting also affects AC and DC analysis.**

For AC Analysis:

- **Sweep Type**: The sweep type can be: **Octave, Decade, Linear, or List**.
  - **Start Freq**: Starting frequency, in Hz.
  - **End Freq**: Final frequency, in Hz.
  - **Points/oct (or dec)**: Number of points per octave or decade.

For DC Analysis:

- **Name**: Name of the source for DC sweep. Source 1 is by default the x-axis. Source 2 can be enabled. DC sweep sources can be voltage, current, or temperature.
- **Sweep Type**: The sweep type can be: **Octave, Decade, Linear, or List**.
  - **Start**: Starting value.
  - **End**: Final value.
  - **Points/oct (or dec)**: Number of points per octave or decade.
If the Enable box in the Step Run option is checked, SPICE will perform parameter sweep. The parameter definition is as below.

For Step Run:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parameter Name</td>
<td>Name of the parameter for Step Run. If the step run is NOT for a voltage or a current source, or temperature, the box &quot;PARAM&quot; must be checked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweep Type</td>
<td>The sweep type can be: Octave, Decade, Linear, or List.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters for the Octave or Decade options:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Starting value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td>Final value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Points/oct (or dec):</td>
<td>Number of points per octave or decade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters for the Linear option:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Starting value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td>Final value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Incremental step size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameters for the List option:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List</td>
<td>A list of values to be analyzed. Values are separated by space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rest of the parameters for SPICE simulation are described below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating Point</th>
<th>If the Enable box is checked, SPICE simulation will determine the dc operating point of a circuit with inductors shorted and capacitors opened.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Analysis (CoolSPICE only)</td>
<td>If the Enable box is checked, SPICE simulation will perform thermal analysis by including the heating effect in device models. All CoolSPICE SiC and GaN models support thermal analysis. With the thermal analysis, the extra node of SiC/GaN models will show the junction temperature of the devices in °C. Note that this option is for CoolSPICE simulation only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error Tolerance Option</td>
<td>If the Enabled box is checked, error tolerances for SPICE simulation can be changed. Otherwise, default values will be used. Error tolerances are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELTOL</td>
<td>Relative tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRTOL</td>
<td>Transient tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNTOL</td>
<td>Absolute voltage error tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSTOL</td>
<td>Absolute current error tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHGTOL</td>
<td>Charge tolerance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SimCoder Tab:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hardware Target</strong></td>
<td>The hardware target can be one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>None</em>: No hardware target in the circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>F2833x</em>: Hardware Target for TI F2833x series DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>F2802x</em>: Hardware Target for TI F2802x series DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>F2803x</em>: Hardware Target for TI F2803x series DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>F2806x</em>: Hardware Target for TI F2806x series DSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>PE-Expert4</em>: Hardware Target for Myway PE-Expert4 DSP platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory Map Options</strong></td>
<td>Specify the memory map for compiler. For F2833x and F2803x hardware target:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAM Debug;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAM Release;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flash Release; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flash RAM Release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU Version</strong></td>
<td>Specify the CPU version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For F2833x</em>: F28335, 28334, and 28332.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For F2803x</em>: F28035, 28034, 28033, 28032, 28031, and 28030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For F2802x</em>: F28027, 28026, 28023, 28022, 28021, 28020, and 280200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>For F2806x</em>: F28069, 28068, 28067, 28066, 28065, 28064, 28063, and 28062.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>InstaSPIN enabled</strong></td>
<td>If the DSP is InstaSPIN enabled (for example F28069M), this box must be checked. Otherwise it should be unchecked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Data Type</strong></td>
<td>This parameter is for fixed-point DSPs, such as F2803x. The default data type options are: Integer, IQ0, IQ1, ... IQ30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the box for Check Fixed-Point Range is checked, the SimCoder will check all the variables against the range and display the result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DMC Library Version</strong></td>
<td>SimCoder has function blocks of all the functions in TI’s DMC library for the following DMC versions: 4.0, 4.1, and 4.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Comments</strong></td>
<td>Comments can be entered and these comments will be inserted at the beginning of the automatically generated code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.7 Component Parameter Specification and Format

The parameter dialog window of each component in PSIM has three tabs: **Parameters**, **Other Info**, and **Color**, as shown below.

The parameters in the **Parameters** tab are used in the simulation. The information in the **Other Info** tab, on the other hand, is not used in the simulation. It is for reporting purposes only and will appear in the parts list in **View >> Element List** in PSIM. Information such as device rating, manufacturer, and part number can be stored under the **Other Info** tab.

The component color can be set in the **Color** tab.

Parameters under the **Parameters** tab can be a numerical value or a mathematical expression. A resistance, for
example, can be specified in one of the following ways:

- 12.5
- 12.5k
- 12.5Ohm
- 12.5kOhm
- 25./2.0hm
- R1+R2
- R1*0.5+(Vo+0.7)/Io

where R1, R2, Vo, and Io are symbols defined either in a parameter file (see Section 4.1), or in a main circuit if this resistor is in a subcircuit (see Section 6.3.4.1).

Power-of-ten suffix letters are allowed in PSIM. The following suffix letters are supported:

- G: $10^9$
- M: $10^6$
- k or K: $10^3$
- m: $10^{-3}$
- u: $10^{-6}$
- n: $10^{-9}$
- p: $10^{-12}$

A mathematical expression can contain brackets and is not case sensitive. The following mathematical functions are allowed:

- $+$: addition
- $-$: subtraction
- $*$: multiplication
- $/$: division
- $^\wedge$: to the power of [i.e. $2^3 = 2*2*2$]
- $**$: to the power of [i.e. $2**3 = 2*2*2$]
- $\sin(x)$: sine
- $\cos(x)$: cosine
- $\tan(x)$: tangent
- $\arcsin(x)$: arcsine
- $\arccos(x)$: arccosine
- $\arccos(x)$: arccosine
- $\arctan(x)$: arctan
- $\arctan(x)$: arctan
- $\arctan2(y,x)$: arctan with x and y defined
- $\sinh(x)$: hyperbolic sine
- $\cosh(x)$: hyperbolic cosine
- $\tanh(x)$: hyperbolic tangent
- $\text{pow}(x,y)$: x to the power of y
- $\text{pwr}(x,y)$: absolute value of x to the power of y, i.e. abs(x)$^y$
- $\text{sqr}(x)$: square of x, i.e. x$^2$
- $\text{sqrt}(x)$: square root
- $\text{hypot}(x_1,x_2,x_3...)$: square root of x1 squared plus x2 squared, plus x3 squared, etc., i.e. sqrt(x$^2_1$ + x$^2_2$ + x$^2_3$ + ...)
- $\text{hypot}(x\_array)$: The input is an array, and it returns the square root of the sum of the array cells squared, i.e. sqrt(x$^2_\text{array[0]}$ + x$^2_\text{array[1]}$ + x$^2_\text{array[2]}$ + ...)
- $\text{exp}(x)$: base-e exponential of x, i.e. e$^x$
- $\ln(x)$ (or log(x)): natural logarithm of x (base e)
- $\log10(x)$: common logarithm of x (base 10)
- $\text{abs}(x)$: absolute
- $\text{sign}(x)$: sign function that returns 1 if $x > 0$, -1 if $x < 0$, and 0 if $x = 0$
- $\text{ceil}(x)$: function that returns the integer larger than x
floor(x) function that returns the integer smaller than x
min(x1,x2,x3...) Minimum value of x1, x2, x3, etc. (no limit on the number of inputs)
min(x_array) The input is an array, and it returns the minimum value of the array cells
max(x1,x2,x3...) Maximum value of x1, x2, x3, etc. (no limit on the number of inputs)
max(x_array) The input is an array, and it returns the maximum value of the array cells
PSIM’s schematic program provides interactive and user-friendly interface for circuit schematic entry and editing. The PSIM user interface consists of an integrated set of windows, tools, menus, toolbars, and other elements that allow you to create, simulate, and refine your circuits in one places.

2.1 PSIM Environment

The following figure shows typical screen display of PSIM environment. In the figure, to illustrate as examples, two PSIM circuit files are open: a boost power factor correction circuit and a dc-dc buck converter circuit.

By default, the menu bar and the standard toolbar appear on top of the window, while the frequently used element bar appears at the bottom, and the Project View is on the left hand side.

On the right hand side is the Design window. This is a graphic editor where users can build and editor their simulation circuit schematics. User may arrange schematics in the Design window in tiles (as shown above), or in tabs (as shown below).
The Project View window provides an organized tree view of user’s projects and their related files, as well as the simulation result graphs. Each PSIM circuit is treated as a project. The following content are displayed in stacking tiers in the project view:

- **Project Name**: Usually this is the same as the top level PSIM circuit file name.
- **Documents**: Any files related to the project, for example document, datasheet, etc.
- **Study**: Name of the study
- **Schematic**: The PSIM schematic files, top level and subcircuits.
- **Graphs**: All probes in the PSIM schematic are included in the graph list.

The following shows a buck converter example in the Project View.

In this example, the project is the buck converter. It contains one study. The main circuit is "buck - main.psimsch", and the subcircuit is "buck - sub.psimsch". There are two simulation waveforms: I(S1.L1) and Vo.

After the simulation is done, the waveforms I(S1.L1) and Vo can be loaded into Simview by simply double...
clicking on the waveform names in Project View. The waveforms can also be embedded into the schematic by dragging into the schematic. For example, the figure above shows the Vo waveform embedded in the schematic.

A project may contain multiple studies. For example, one may study the buck converter circuit with a different load filter or switching frequency. To create another study out of an existing study, right click on the existing study "buck - main" and select **Create Study copy**. A dialog window will appear as shown below to allow you to define the new study name and determine if you wish to make a copy of the subcircuit.

In this example, we will create a new study called "buck - main1" and create a copy of the subcircuit. After confirmation, the new study is created as shown below. The new files "buck - main1.psimsch" and "buck - sub.psimsch" are placed in a newly created folder "buck - main\buck - main1".

To add an existing schematic file into the project as another study, right click on the project "buck - main" and select **Add Study**. To save the project, right click on the project "buck - main" and select **Save Project**.
2.2 Creating a Circuit

The basic and most commonly used functions provided for circuit creation are:

Get Element

There are several ways to get an element from the element library. One is to use the pull-down menu. Go to the Elements menu, and go into the submenu and highlight the element to be selected.

The most often used elements can be selected the Element Toolbar. It is located at the bottom of the PSIM screen by default.

Another way is to use the Library Browser, as shown below. The Library Browser provides a convenient way of navigating through the library. To launch the Library Browser, go to View >> Library Browser.

Place

Once an element is selected from the menu, the image of the element will appear on the screen and move with the mouse. Click the left button of the mouse to place the element at desired location on schematic.

Select Element(s)

To select an existing element on a schematic, click on the element. A rectangle will appear around the element. To select a section of a circuit, keep the left button of a mouse pressed and drag the mouse until the rectangle covers the selected area.

Rotate

Before the element is placed, right click to rotate the element. After an element is selected, select Edit >> Rotate to rotate the element.

Wire

To connect a wire between two nodes, select Edit >> Wire. The image of a pen will appear on the screen. To draw a wire, keep the left button of the mouse pressed and drag the mouse. A wire always starts from and end at a grid intersection.

For easy inspection, a floating node is displayed as a circle, and a junction node is displayed as a solid dot.

Label

If two or more nodes are connected to the same label, they are connected. It is equivalent as though they were connected by wire. Using labels will reduce the cross-wiring and improve the schematic layout.

The text of a label can be moved. To select the text, left click on the label, then press the Tab key.

Assign

To assign the parameters of an element, double click on the element. A dialog box will appear. Specify the values and hit the <Return> key or click on OK.
Move To move an element or a circuit block, select the element/circuit block and drag the mouse while keeping the left button pressed.

Pan Schematic To scroll schematic, right click and drag the mouse.

2.3 File Menu

The following functions are provided in the File menu for various file operations:

New Create a new schematic with a single worksheet with no size limit.

New (worksheet) Create a new schematic with a predefined worksheet size.

Open Open an existing schematic file.

Open Examples Open sample schematic files that come with PSIM.

Change Worksheet Size Change the worksheet size.

New SPICE Netlist File Create a new SPICE netlist file

Open SPICE Netlist File Open an existing SPICE netlist file

New Project Create a new PSIM project.

Open Project Open an existing PSIM project.

Save Project Save current PSIM project.

Close Close the current schematic file.

Close All Close all schematic files.

Save Save the current schematic file.

Save As... Save the current schematic file to a different name.

Save All Save all schematic files.

Save with Password Save a schematic file so that it is protected with a password. When a file is password protected, it can still be used in the simulation, but one needs to enter the correct password in order to see the schematic. The password protection is used in situations where the person who created the file needs to share it with someone else, but does not wish to reveal the details of the schematic.

Save in Package File Save a schematic file and all associated files to one single package file. This is especially useful if the main circuit calls multiple subcircuits, and one needs to send the files to someone else. Rather than finding and collecting all the subcircuit files, one can just create the package file and send out the single package file.

Save as Older Versions Save a file in the previous version format. Note that if the file uses elements that are unique in the current version, these elements will be omitted.

Print Print the schematic. Note that the schematic is printed as it appears on the screen. If you zoom in or out the schematic, the printout will be changed accordingly.

Print Preview Preview the printout.

Print Selected Print only a portion of the schematic selected.

Print Selected Preview Preview the printout of the portion of the schematic selected.

Print Page Setup Adjust the print page position and set the print page legend.

Printer Setup Set up the printer.

Exit Exit the PSIM schematic program.

2.4 Edit Menu

The following functions are provided in the Edit menu for circuit editing:

Undo Undo the previous change.

Redo Go back to the state before undoing the changes.

Cut Cut the selected circuit out of the schematic. The circuit that is cut can be pasted back.

To delete an element or a portion of the circuit, select the item and hit <Delete> key.
Copy
Copy an element or a portion of a circuit into a buffer, which can then be pasted back.

Paste
Paste back the copied element or circuit.

Select Matched Elements
Select the elements which matches the specification.

Select All
Select the entire schematic.

To select only a portion of the schematic, left click and drag the mouse.

Copy to Clipboard
Copy the schematic image to the clipboard which can then be pasted back in another software. One can choose one of the three options: Metafile Format, Color Bitmap, or Black and White bitmap. The metafile format is vector based, and gives better image quality especially when the image is resized. The Black & White option will result in a smaller image file size as compared to the color bitmap.

Draw
Draw images on the schematic for display purposes. The following images are provided: line, ellipse, rectangle, half-circles, bitmap images, and graph.

To draw a bitmap image: left click the mouse and drag the mouse to define the area that will contain the bitmap image. Then select the bitmap file.

To draw a graph, left click the mount and drag the mouse to define the area that will display the waveform of selected probe.

Change All Text Font
Change the font for all the text in the opened PSIM file

Change all Text Link Font
Change the font for all the text link in the opened PSIM file.

Place Text
To place text on the screen, choose Text. Enter the text in the dialog box, and click the left button of the mouse to place it.

Place Wire
Enter the wiring mode. The cursor will change to the shape of a pen.

Place Label
Place a label on the schematic. When two nodes are connected to two labels of the same name, they are considered physically connected.

Edit Attributes
When an element is selected, choose Attributes to bring out the property dialog window.

Add/Remove Current Scope
Add or remove the current scope for an element that has the current flag. After this function is selected, click on top of the element, and select the branch current name to display the current scope. Select the branch current name again to remove the current scope.

Show/Hide Runtime Variables
Show or hide the parameters of elements that can be changed at runtime in the middle of the simulation. After this is selected, the text of the parameter will appear. Double click on the text, and a small dialog window will appear. Enter the new value directly in the data field, and click Apply. Or alternatively, click on the up/down arrow keys on the keyboard to increase/decrease the value.

Disable
Disable an element or part of a circuit. When the element or the circuit is disabled, it will be grayed out and will be treated as non-existent as far as the simulation is concerned. This function is useful if an element or circuit needs to be excluded but not deleted from the circuit.

Enable
Enable a previously disabled element or circuit.

Rotate
Rotate the selected element or a portion of the circuit by 90° clockwise.

Flip Left/Right
Flip the selected element horizontally.

Flip Top/Bottom
Flip the selected element vertically.

Find
Find a particular element based on type and name.

Find Next
Repeat the previous Find operation.

Find in Files
Find a particular element in several files.

Edit Library
Edit PSIM image libraries. For more details, please refer to Section 2.12.

Image Editor
Launch the image editor. For more details, please refer to Section 2.13.

Escape
Quit from any of the above editing modes by choosing Escape.
2.5 View Menu

The following additional functions are provided in the View menu for circuit editing:

- **Application Look**: Select the display style of the PSIM windows.
- **Status Bar**: Show/hide the status bar.
- **Toolbar**: Show/hide the toolbar.
- **Element Bar**: Show/hide the element bar.
- **Library Browser**: Launch the Library Browser. The Library Browser is another way of accessing the PSIM Element library.
- **Project View**: Launch the Project View. The project view organizes and manages the related files. The projects organizing structure has been illustrated in Section 2.1
- **Zoom In**: Zoom in the schematic.
- **Zoom Out**: Zoom out the schematic.
- **Fit to Page**: Adjust the zooming so that the entire schematic fits the screen.
- **Zoom In Selected**: Zoom in to the selected area.
- **Zoom Level**: Zoom the schematic to 10%, 20%, ..., 200%, and custom size.
- **Element List**: Generate the parts list of the circuit.
- **Element Count**: Count the number of elements. Voltage/current probes and meters are not included in the element count.
- **SPICE Model List**: List all the SPICE models defined by the .model statement in the files in all the folders under the SPICE Model Path.
- **SPICE Subcircuit List**: List all the SPICE models defined by the .subckt statement in the files in all the folders under the SPICE Model Path.
- **Display Voltage/Current**: If the option *Save all voltages and currents* (under Options >> Settings >> General) is checked, after the simulation is complete, choose this function to display any node voltages or branch currents.
- **Display Differential Voltage**: With the option *Save all voltages and currents* checked, after the simulation is complete, choose this function to display any voltages between two nodes.
- **Set Node Name**: With the option *Save all voltages and currents* checked, after the simulation is complete, choose this function to define the name of a node so that the displayed voltage waveform has the specified name.
- **Refresh**: Refresh the screen display.

2.6 Design Suites Menu

Functions are provided in the Design Suites menu to run two design suite templates which generate electrical circuit schematics automatically.

The following functions are provided:

- **Update Parameters**: Update the parameters in the circuit generated by design suite
- **Show Design File**: Display the system in design template form
- **Display Parameters**: Display the parameters of the system
- **HEV Design Suite**: Run the design templates in the HEV Design Suite. Four design templates are provided: HEV Powertrain System, PHEV (plug-in hybrid electric vehicle) Powertrain System, HEV Generator, and HEV Traction Motor. Each template has its linear and nonlinear version.
- **Motor Control Design Suite**: Run the design templates in the Motor Control Design Suite. Five design templates are provided: PMSM (IPM) Drive, PMSM(IPM) Drive (Nonlinear), PMSM(SPM) Drive, PMSM Drive, and Induction Motor Drive. For more information about how to use Motor Control Design Suite, refer to the document "Tutorial - Motor Control Design Suite.pdf".


2.7 Subcircuit Menu

Functions are provided in the Subcircuit menu for subcircuit editing and manipulation.

The following functions are to be performed in the parent circuit (outside the subcircuit):

- **New Subcircuit**: Create a new subcircuit
- **Load Subcircuit**: Load an existing subcircuit. The subcircuit will appear on the screen as a block.
- **Edit Subcircuit**: Edit the size and file name of the subcircuit
- **Display Subcircuit Name**: Display the name of a selected subcircuit in the main circuit
- **Show Subcircuit Ports**: Display the port names of the subcircuit in the main circuit
- **Hide Subcircuit Ports**: Hide the port names of the subcircuit in the main circuit
- **Subcircuit List**: List the file names of the main circuit and the subcircuits

The following functions are to be performed inside the subcircuit:

- **Set Size**: Set the size of the subcircuit
- **Place Bi-directional Port**: Place a bi-directional connection port in the subcircuit
- **Place Input Signal Port**: Place an input signal connection port in the subcircuit
- **Place Output Signal Port**: Place an output signal connection port in the subcircuit
- **Display Port**: Display the connection port of the subcircuit
- **Edit Default Variable List**: Edit the default variable list of the subcircuit. This is done inside the subcircuit.
- **Edit Image**: Edit the subcircuit image
- **One Page up**: Go back to the main circuit. The subcircuit is automatically saved.
- **Top Page**: Jump from a lower-level subcircuit to the top-level main circuit. This is useful for circuits with multiple layers of subcircuits.

If the functions **Set Size**, **Display Port**, **Edit Default Variable List**, and **Edit Image** are performed in the main circuit, they will be applied to the main circuit instead.

There are three types of subcircuit ports for signal interface with the main circuit: Bi-directional port for power circuit and mechanical systems, and input signal and output signal ports for control circuit.

Even though bi-directional ports also work for control circuit, it is strongly recommended to use input or output signal ports for control circuit for better clarity. Furthermore, if a subcircuit is involved in code generation, only input or output signal ports can be used.

Right click on top of the subcircuit block, and choose Attributes to display the subcircuit property dialog window. There are three tabs: Subcircuit Info, Subcircuit Variables, and Color.

In the Subcircuit Info Tab:

In this tab, the name of the subcircuit can be edited. click on the Change Subcircuit File button to change to a different subcircuit. The selected subcircuit file will be loaded instead.

In the Subcircuit Variables Tab:

In this tab, variables used in the subcircuit can be edited. For example, a resistor in the circuit has the resistance defined as "Rparasitic", and for better clarity, this resistance is referred to as "Parasitic Resistance". Also, the resistance has a value of 1mOhm. This variable will be entered as:

- Variable Description: Parasitic Resistance
- Variable Name: Rparasitic
- Variable Value: 1m

When the checkbox for "Parasitic Resistance" is checked, in the main circuit, this variable will be displayed as:
Parasitic Resistance = 1m

Since subcircuit variable list can be edited, the current variable list may be different from the default variable list. One can click on the Set as Default Variables button to set the current variable list as the default list, or click on the Reload Default Variables button to reload the default list if the default list has been modified.

Two functions are provided at the bottom of the dialog for SimCoder for automatic code generation. Click on the Generate Code button to generate code for this subcircuit. If the checkbox Replace subcircuit with generated code for simulation is checked, the schematic inside the subcircuit will be replaced by the generated code for simulation.

In the Color Tab: In this tab, the subcircuit color can be changed.

Example: Use of Subcircuit

The circuit below illustrates the use of subcircuit. The circuit on the left is a buck converter, with the L-C filter inside a subcircuit. The content of the subcircuit is shown on the right.

In this example, there are two bi-directional ports ("in+" and "in-") on the left, and two bi-directional ports ("o+" and "o-") on the right.

2.7.1 Creating Subcircuit - In the Main Circuit

The following are the steps to create the subcircuit “chop_sub.sch” in the main circuit “chop.sch”.

- Open or create the main circuit “chop.sch”.
- If the file “chop_sub.sch” does not exist, go to the Subcircuit menu, and select New Subcircuit. If the file exists, select Load Subcircuit instead.
- A subcircuit block (rectangle) will appear on the screen. Place the subcircuit.

If the circuit that is to be converted into a subcircuit has already been created in the main circuit, a quick way of converting it into a subcircuit is to select the circuit, and then right click and choose Create Subcircuit. Specify the subcircuit file name as "chop_sub.sch", and the circuit will be converted into a subcircuit. Adjust the port location and wire connection if necessary.

2.7.2 Creating Subcircuit - Inside the Subcircuit

To enter the subcircuit, double click on the subcircuit block.

- Create/edit the content of the subcircuit circuit exactly the same way as in the main circuit.
- To specify the subcircuit size, select Set Size in the Subcircuit menu. In this example, the size is set to 4x7 (width of 4 divisions and height of 7 divisions). Note that the size of the subcircuit should be chosen such that it gives the proper appearance and allows easy wire connection in the main circuit.
- Once the subcircuit is complete, define ports to connect the subcircuit nodes with the corresponding nodes in the main circuit. Choosing Place Port in the Subcircuit menu, and a port image will appear.
After the port is placed in the circuit, a pop-up window (shown on the left below) will appear.

The diamonds on the four sides represent the connection nodes and the positions of the subcircuit. They correspond to the connection nodes of the subcircuit block on the right. There are no diamonds at the four corners since connections to the corners are not permitted.

When a diamond is selected, it is colored red. By default, the left diamond at the top is selected and marked with red color. Click on the desired diamond to select and to specify the port name.

In this example, in the main circuit “chop.sch”, there are four linking nodes, two on the left side and two on the right side of the subcircuit block. The relative position of the nodes are that the upper two nodes are 1 division below the top and the lower two nodes are 1 division above the bottom.

To specify the upper left linking node, click on the top diamond of the left side, and type “in+”. The text “in+” will be within that diamond box and a port labelled with “in+” will appear on the screen. Connect the port to the upper left node. The same procedure is repeated for the linking nodes “in-”, “out+”, and “out-”.

After the four nodes are placed, the node assignment and the subcircuit appear as shown below.

The creation of the subcircuit is now complete. Save the subcircuit, and go back to the main circuit.

### 2.7.3 Connecting Subcircuit - In the Main Circuit

Once the subcircuit is created and connection ports are defined, complete the connection to the subcircuit block in the main circuit.

- In the main circuit, the connection points on the borders of the subcircuit block appear as hollow circles.
- Select the subcircuit block, and select **Show Subcircuit Ports** in the Subcircuit menu to display the
port names as defined inside the subcircuit.
- Connect the wires to the connection points accordingly.

2.7.4 Other Features of the Subcircuit

This section describes other features of the subcircuit through the example shown below.

2.7.4.1 Passing Variables from the Main Circuit to Subcircuit

In this example, the main circuit “main.sch” uses a subcircuit “sub.sch”. In the subcircuit, the inductance value is defined as “L” and the capacitance is defined as “C”. The default values of L and C can be set by selecting Subcircuit | Set Default Variable List. In this case, L is set to 5mH and C is set to 100uF.

When the subcircuit is loaded into the main circuit the first time, this default variable list will appear in the tab “Subcircuit Variables” in Subcircuit | Edit Subcircuit from the main circuit “main.sch”. New variables can be added here and variable values can be changed. In this case, L is changed to 2mH, and C is kept the same as the default value.

Note that the variables and the values are saved to the netlist file and used in simulation. The default variable list inside the subcircuit is not saved to the netlist and is not used for simulation.

This feature allows the parameters of a subcircuit to be defined at the main circuit level. In the case where the same subcircuit is used several times in one main circuit, different parameters can be assigned to the same variable. For example, if the subcircuit “sub.sch” is used two times in above example, in one subcircuit L can be defined as 3mH, and in another subcircuit L can be defined as 1mH.

Note that this example also illustrates the feature that parameters can be defined as a variable (for example “Vin” for the input dc voltage source) or a mathematical expression (for example “R1+R2” for the load resistance). The variables “Vin”, “R1”, and “R2”, are defined in the parameter file “para-main.txt”. See Section 4.1 for more details.
2.7.4.2 Customizing the Subcircuit Image

The following are the procedures to customize the subcircuit image of “sub.sch”:

- In the subcircuit, select **Edit Image** in the **Subcircuit** menu. A window will pop-up, as shown below.

![Edit Image Window]

In the window, the diamonds marked red are the connection nodes of the subcircuit block, in exactly the same positions as appearing in the main circuit.

- Use the drawing tool to create/edit the image for the subcircuit block. If the drawing tool is not already displayed, go to the **View** menu and check **Drawing Tools**. Click on **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** icons on the toolbar to adjust the size of the image working area.

After the image is created, the pop-out window will appear as follows.

![Created Image Window]

- Go back to the subcircuit window (“sub.sch” in this case), and save the subcircuit. The new subcircuit block image should appear in the main circuit.

2.7.4.3 Including Subcircuits in the PSIM Element List

If you create a directory called “User Defined” under the PSIM directory, and place subcircuits inside this directory, subcircuits will appear as items in the **Elements** menu, under **Elements | User Defined**, just like any other PSIM elements. You can also create subdirectories under the directory **User Defined**, and place subcircuits inside the subdirectories. For example, the **Elements** menu may look like this:

- Power
- Control
- Other
- Sources
- Symbols
- User Defined
  - Subcircuit 1
In this way, common-used custom-built subcircuits can be grouped together and easily managed and accessed.

2.8 Elements Menu

In PSIM, all the elements are stored under the Elements menu. They are stored in the following menus:

- Power: Power circuit elements, such as R, L, C, switching devices, transformers, motor drive modules, and etc.
- Control: Control circuit elements, such as computational logic, digital control elements and etc.
- Other: Elements interconnecting power and control circuit, such as switch controllers, voltage/current sensors, probes, and etc.
- Sources: Various voltage and current sources
- Symbols: Symbols for drawing purpose, not for simulation usage
- Event Control: Event control elements
- SimCoder: SimCoder blocks for automatic code generation
- User Defined: Users can create a subfolder called "User Defined" in the PSIM folder, and place common used files in this folder. The folder "User Defined" and files in the folder will appear in the Elements >> User Defined menu.

2.9 Simulate Menu

The following functions are provided in the Simulate menu:

- Simulation Control: Set the simulation parameters such as time step, total time, etc. When this is selected, the cursor will change to the image of a clock. Place this clock on the schematic, and double click to display the property window.
- Run Simulation: Run PSIM simulation
- Run SPICE Simulation: Run SPICE simulation using the built-in SPICE engine in PSIM
- Run LTspice Simulation: Run LTspice simulation
- Cancel Simulation: Cancel the simulation that is currently in progress
- Pause Simulation: Pause the simulation that is currently in progress
- Restart Simulation: Resume a paused simulation
- Simulate Next Time Step: Run the simulation to the next time step, and pause
- Run SIMVIEW: Launch the waveform display program SIMVIEW
- Generate Netlist File: Generate the PSIM netlist file
- Generate Netlist File (xml): Generate the PSIM netlist file in xml format
- View Netlist File: View the generated PSIM netlist file
- Generate SPICE Netlist (.net): Generate the SPICE netlist file from the schematic
- Generate SPICE Netlist (.cir): Generate the SPICE netlist for LTspice simulation. The .cir file will be saved to the folder automatically.
- Show Warning: Show the warning messages, if any, from the simulation.
- Show Fixed-Point Range Check Result: Display the fixed-point range check result. This is used to show if fixed-point variables are within the range or not for SimCoder circuits for fixed-point DSP (such as F2803x/F2806x/F2802x)
- Arrange SLINK Nodes: Rearrange the SLINK nodes. This function is for the SimCoupler Module for co-simulation with Matlab/Simulink. Please refer to Section 3.6 for more details.
**Check Multi-Level Elements** Check and change the model level setting of multi-level elements in one place. This function can also show elements that are not compatible with PSIM simulation or with SPICE simulation.

**Generate Code** Generate code from the control schematic. This function is for SimCoder for automatic code generation. Please refer to SimCoder User Manual for more details.

**Open Generated Code Folder** Open the folder where the generated code are located.

**Runtime Graphs** Select waveforms to display in the middle of a simulation run.

The dialog window of the **Runtime Graphs** function has two tabs: **Standard** and **Vector**. The **Standard** tab lists the variables for time-domain waveform display. The **Vector** tab defines vectors for vector plot. The real and imaginary parts of a vector comes from the same variable list as in the **Standard** tab.

To view the simulation waveforms of output variables in the middle of simulation, one can either go to **Simulate >> Runtime Graphs** and select the variables, or right click on top of a voltage probe or current probe and select **Runtime Graph Window** from the menu.

A runtime graph display the waveform in its entirety, from the beginning to the final study time. Because of this, the runtime graphs are disabled in the free-run mode as the final study time is undetermined.

In the free-run mode, the majority of the element parameters can be changed during runtime in the middle of the simulation. This makes it possible to tune a circuit while inspecting key waveforms using voltage/current scopes, until desired performance is achieved.

To illustrate how to run a simulation in the free-run mode, a buck converter circuit shown below is used as an example. The circuit on the left was originally set up for the one-time simulation, with the total simulation time set to a specific value.

To set up the simulation in the free-run mode:

- In Simulation Control, check the **Free Run** checkbox.
- Go to **Elements >> Other >> Scopes**, and select the 2-channel voltage scope. Connect the scope as shown above on the right.
- Double click on the scope, and the scope image will appear. Start the simulation, and the waveforms will appear and will be updated continuously in the scope. Change the scope settings as desired.
- Elements parameters can now be adjusted in the middle of the simulation. To adjust the gain of the PI controller, for example, right click on top of the PI block, and choose **Runtime Variables >> Gain**. The text of the gain "0.6" will be displayed if it has not been displayed already.
- Click on the text "0.6", and a small dialog window will appear. The screen should look as follows.
- Place the cursor inside the input field of the dialog window for the gain, and change the gain either by pressing on the upper/down arrow keys on the keyboard, or by entering a new value and then clicking on Apply. Watch how the waveforms change as the gain is changed.

Other parameters, such as current reference, dc input voltage, inductance, capacitance, and load resistance, can be changed in the similar way.

- Branch currents can also be displayed in the free-run mode. To display the inductor current, for example, right click on top of the inductor, and a menu will appear. Choose Current Scopes and the branch current name.

- An image of the current scope (similar to the voltage scope image, but without connection terminals) will appear. Double click on the scope to expand and view the inductor waveform.

Below is how the window would look like with both the voltage scope and the current scope.

Other branch currents, such as capacitor current, load current, diode current, or MOSFET switch current, can be displayed in the similar way.
Running Simulation in a Command Line:

Simulation can also be launched with the command line option by running the program PsimCmd.exe. For example, to simulate the circuit "buck.psimsch" which is stored in the folder "c:\Powersim\examples", go to the PSIM folder, and run the following command:

```
PsimCmd -i "c:\psim\examples\buck.psimsch" -o "c:\psim\examples\buck.smv"
```

The format of the command line is as follows:

```
PsimCmd -i "[input file]" -o "[output file]" -v "VarName1=VarValue1" -v "VarName2=VarValue2" -t "TotalTime" -s "TimeStep" -g
```

Note that the quotes around the parameter values must be present. The command-line parameters are:

- `-i`: Input schematic file name
- `-o`: Output file name (in either .txt or .smv extension)
- `-v`: Variable name and value. This parameter can be used multiple times. For example, to define the resistance R1 as 1.5 and the inductance L1 as 0.001, we have:

  ```
  -v "R1=1.5"  -v "L1=0.001"
  ```

- `-t`: Total time of the simulation
- `-s`: Time step of the simulation
- `-g`: Run SIMVIEW after the simulation is complete

Note that the number of variables that can be defined in a command line is limited to 30.

With the command-line option, one can run several circuits automatically in a batch run.

### 2.10 Options Menu

The following functions are provided in the **Options** menu for various settings:

**Settings...**

Set the simulation parameters such as time step, total time, etc. When this is selected, the cursor will change to the image of a clock. Place this clock on the schematic, and double click to display the property window.

**Languages**

Select different languages for PSIM display.

**Auto-run SIMVIEW**

Automatically run SIMVIEW after the simulation is complete.

**Set Path...**

Set the PSIM search paths and device file paths.

**Enter Password**

Enter the password to view a schematic file that is password protected.
Disable Password  Disable the protection of a schematic file that is password protected.

Customize...  Create customized toolbars, keyboard, and application menu frame.

Save Custom Settings...  Save the following custom settings to a file: Default element values; custom keyboard definition; and custom toolbar definition. This file can then be loaded on another computer using the Load Custom Settings... function. This is useful when you want to apply the same custom settings on another computer.

Load Custom Settings...  Load custom setting files saved by the Save Custom Settings... function. This will apply the custom settings defined in the file to this computer.

Load Legacy Tool Bars  Load legacy tool bars of previous PSIM versions.

Deactivate  Deactivate the PSIM license. This is for softkey version only.

Change Softkey Password  Change the password of login for running PSIM softkey version. This is for softkey version only.

Check for Software Update  Check if any newer software updates are available on the Powersim server. This is for licenses that have the Annual Software Maintenance only.

2.10.1 Setting Option

The Settings menu has tabs: General, Advanced, Colors, and Page Sizes.

The General tab contains these sections: Editing, Text Font, Printing, and Simulation:

In the Editing section:

Display grid  Check this option to display the grid in the PSIM schematic.

Zoom factor  The zoom factor defined here is used when the schematic is zoomed in or out.

Enable rubber band  When checked, an element or a portion of a circuit remains connected with the rest of the circuit when moved.

Show print page border  When enabled, the border of the printout will be displayed.

In the Text Font section:

Default text font  Set the default font for the text placed in the schematic.

Justification  Define how the text will be aligned.

Default graph font  Set the text font for the runtime graphs.

In the Printing section:

Line thickness  Define the thickness of the line as it appears at the printout. It can be set to 1 (the thinnest) to 4 (the thickest). Note that the line thickness only affects the printout. It does not affect the display on the screen.

In the Simulation Section:

Simulation result format  Simulation results can be saved in either binary format (default) or text format. The binary format will result in a smaller result file, and will be faster to load. Set the default font for the text placed in the schematic.

Output buffer size  When checked, the simulation data will be written to the result file in segment. For example, if the buffer size is set to 20 MB, the simulation data will be first saved to the buffer, and when it reaches 20 MB, the whole 20-MB data will be written to the result file. Please note that the runtime graph only plots the data in the buffer. Therefore, when the old data are saved to the file and the new data fills in the buffer, the runtime graph will only show the waveform of the new data, and the old waveform will be lost. To retain all the waveforms in the runtime graph, one can either increase the buffer size, or un-check this option.

When this option is un-checked, however, PSIM will allocate all the required memory for the buffer at the very beginning. If the simulation time step is small and the total time is long, and if there are many output curves, a very large memory may be required, which will take some time to allocate, and may even fail if the computer does not have sufficient
amount of memory.

**Disable simulation warning messages** When this option is checked, warning messages generated in the simulation are suppressed.

**Save all voltages and current** When this option is checked, all the voltages and currents of the circuit will be saved for display. To display a voltage or current, after the simulation is complete and after results are loaded into SIMVIEW, choose View >> Display Voltage/Current (or click on the corresponding icon). When the cursor is on top of a node or a branch, it will change to the image of a voltage probe or current clamp probe. Left click the mouse, and the corresponding voltage or current will appear in SIMVIEW.

To display a differential voltage, choose View >> Display Differential Voltage. Then click on the first node, and then the second node. The differential voltage waveform will appear in SIMVIEW.

**Maximum number of points for oscilloscope** It defines the maximum number of points that an oscilloscope will plot. Increase this number to display waveforms for a longer time interval.


In the Updates section:

**Check for software updates** When this option is checked, if you have the valid software annual maintenance, PSIM will automatically check for new updates on the Powersim server. If a new update is available, you will be prompted to install the update.

In the Backup section:

**Automatic backup** When this option is checked, PSIM will create a backup of the file currently being edited in the time interval specified. In case of a program crash, the backup file will preserve the previous work. The backup file is deleted automatically when the file is closed normally from the PSIM environment.

In the Idle Time (for network version) section:

**Idle time** When this option is checked, PSIM will be timed out after the program is idle for the specified amount of time. Note that this applies to the PSIM network version only.

When PSIM is timed out, the license will be released and other users will be able to check it out. When PSIM is back from the idle state, it will try to log back in the License Manager if a license is still available. If there is no license available, an error message will be posted.

This feature will prevent users from holding up licenses unintentionally.

In the Hardware Code Generation section:

**Show image next to elements** This is for SimCoder only for automatic code generation. When this option is checked, in the PSIM library, an image will appear next to the elements that can be used for code generation. This is used to differentiate elements that can be used for code generation from the ones that can not.

In the SPICE section:

**Show image next to elements that can be used for SPICE** When this option is checked, in the PSIM library, an image will appear next to the elements that can be used for SPICE simulation.

In the Alternate PSIM Help File Path section:

**Use alternate PSIM help file path** By default, PSIM reads the help file psim.chm from the same PSIM folder. When this option is checked, PSIM will read the help file from the specified file path instead.

In the Parameter File Variables section:

**Significant digits** It defines the number of significant digits for variables defined in a parameter file and used in a C block. For example, if k1 is defined as "k1 = 10/3" and the number of
significant digits is defined as 8, a value of $k_1=3.3333333$ will be used.

**Delete SIMVIEW files on exit** If this option is checked, PSIM will delete simulation output files of the current session on exit.

The *Colors* tab defines the colors for grids, elements, subcircuits, ports, wire, text, nodes, and labels.

### 2.10.2 Set Path Option

The Set Path option defines four types of search paths:

- **PSIM Search Path**: Search path for DLL files
- **Device File Path**: Search path for Thermal Module device files
- **C Block Include Path**: Search path for C block include files
- **SPICE Model Path**: Search path for SPICE model library

The PSIM search path allows users to define additional search paths when loading an external DLL file. For example, if a schematic file uses a DLL file, and this DLL file is placed in a directory other than the schematic directory or the PSIM directory, this directory can be included in PSIM by using the *Set Path* function.

Similarly, if a Thermal Module device is placed in a folder other than the default device folder, this device file can be used by PSIM schematic by including the folder in the Device File Path.

PSIM searches the DLL files in the following order:

- **PSIM directory**
- **Schematic file directory**
- **Directories as defined in the PSIM Search Path section.**

The first time that the DLL file is encountered, it will be loaded. For example, assume that the PSIM program files are in C:\PSIM, the schematic file is in C:\TEMP; and the directory as defined in the *Set Path* function is C:\TEMPDLL. The DLL file can be in one of the three places:

- C:\PSIM
- C:\TEMP
- C:\TEMPDLL

PSIM loads the Thermal Module device files in the following order:

- **The "device" sub-folder in the PSIM directory**
- **Directories as defined in the Device File Path section.**

All the device files in the PSIM's device sub-folder and in the folders defined in the Device File Path will be loaded.
2.10.3 Customizing Toolbars and Keyboards

The procedures for create customized toolbars and to customize keyboards are described below.

Customizing Toolbars:

To create a toolbar called "new" and add the AND gate to the toolbar, for example, do the following:

• Choose View >> Custom Toolbars. The Custom Toolbars dialog window will appear. Choose New Toolbar, and the following window will appear.
• Specify the Toolbar Name as "new".
• Draw the AND gate icon in the icon editing area. Or if the icon is already available in the predefined icon images, select the icon and copy it to the icon editing area.
• Under the Edit Command section, with the option Elements selected, highlight "AND Gate". Then click on the Add Button. The icon will appear in the toolbar icon area. Click on OK to close the window, and go back to the Custom Toolbars window.
• Check "new" in the Custom Toolbars dialog window, and the new toolbar will appear. Uncheck the box will hide the toolbar.

Customizing Keyboard:

To define the key "r" for getting a resistor from the library, for example, do the following:

• Choose View >> Custom Keyboard. The Custom Toolbars dialog window will appear. Choose New Toolbar, and the following window will appear.
• In the section Add Shortcut Key, select the option Elements. Then find and highlight the element "Resistor".
• Move the cursor into the input field of **Press new shortcut key**, and press the key "r" on the keyboard. Then click on **Assign**.
• The key "r" will be assigned to the resistor, and the definition will appear in the **Current Shortcut Key** list.

### 2.11 Utilities Menu

Several utility programs are provided under the **Utilities** menu.

**Parameter Tool**  
It launches a parameter file window. One can load an existing parameter file, or enter expressions for computation purposes.

**Script Tool**  
The script tool allows one to run a script.

**SPICE Netlist Check**  
The tool checks if a SPICE netlist is supported by CoolSPICE, the SPICE engine used in PSIM. The tool will convert a non-compatible netlist to CoolSPICE-compatible netlist whenever possible, suggest how to make the change, or identify the netlist that is not supported.

**s2z Converter**  
This program converts a s-domain function to a z-domain function. This program is part of the Digital Control Module option.

**SimCoupler Setup**  
This will launch the program SetSimPath.exe that performs the setup for co-simulation between PSIM and Matlab/Simulink. This function is part of the SimCoupler Module.

**Set Default PSIM Program**  
Run this function to set this version of PSIM to be the default program to open .psimsch, .sch, and .smv files when double clicking on these files in Windows Explorer.

**DSP Oscilloscope**  
The DSP Oscilloscope function is available as part of the SimCoder Hardware Targets. It is used together with the SCI functions to display DSP waveforms in real time. For more information on how to use the DSP Oscilloscope, please refer to the document "Tutorial - Using SCI for Waveform Monitoring.pdf".

**Device Database Editor**  
The device database editor PcdEditor.exe for the Thermal Module.

**Curve Capture Tool**  
Tool to capture curves from manufacturer datasheet. The captured data can be plotted using SIMVIEW, or used in lookup tables. This tool can also be used to read the x/y values from a curve.

To start the capture process, click on the right arrow at the upper left corner of the dialog window.

**B-H Curve**  
This program plots the B-H curve of the saturable core element (under **Elements >> Power >> Magnetic Elements**).

**Solar Module (physical model)**  
This program plots the i-v curve of the solar module (physical model) element (under **Elements >> Power >> Renewable Energy**). This function is part of the Renewable Energy option.

**Ultra-capacitor Model Tool**  
The parameter extraction tool for ultra-capacitor models. For more information, please refer to the document "Tutorial - Ultra-capacitor Model.pdf".

**Launch/Export to SmartCtrl**  
Launch the SmartCtrl software, or if the ac sweep result is available, to export the ac sweep result to SmartCtrl. SmartCtrl is a separate software for control loop design. For more information, please refer to the Help menu in SmartCtrl.

**Unit Converter**  
This program performs unit conversion in length, area, weight, and temperature.

**Calculator**  
This will launch the Windows’ calculator.
2.12 Managing the PSIM Library

A PSIM library element consists of two parts: the netlist part and the image part. The netlist part comes from the netlist library, and there is only one netlist library, psim.lib. The netlist library can not be edited.

The image part comes from an image library. There can be multiple image libraries, and all the image libraries in the PSIM directory will be automatically loaded into PSIM. The standard image library provided by PSIM is psimimage.lib. This file also can not be edited. However, in order to facilitate users to copy images from the standard image library, the standard image library can be viewed by going to Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit library files, and choosing psimimage.lib.

Users can create their own custom image libraries. To create a new custom image library, go to Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit library files, and click on New library. Then define the library name as it appears in the PSIM Elements menu, and the library file name. This library file will be created and placed in the PSIM directory.

To edit an image library, go to Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit library files, and select the library file. The figure below shows the library editor dialog window. The dialog shows the menu tree of the library as well as various functions.

To create a new element in the custom image library, click on New Element, and select the netlist that this element corresponds to from the list. For example, the netlist name of the resistor is "R". To create a new element called "My Resistor", select the netlist "R". To create the image for this resistor, click on Edit Image.

The following functions are provided in the library editor:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Move an element up in the menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down</td>
<td>Move an element down in the menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>Move an element one level lower in the menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>Move an element one level higher in the menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Separator</td>
<td>Add a separator between elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Submenu</td>
<td>Add a submenu in the library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Edit the name of an element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit Image</td>
<td>Edit the image of an element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Element</td>
<td>Create a new element in the image library. This element will be linked to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netlist element in the netlist library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Element as</td>
<td>Save the existing element as a new element. The new element will have the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>image of the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
existing element as the default image.

Delete Element  Delete an element from the library
New Element (DLL)  Create a new element from a DLL file
New Subcircuit Element (External)  Create a new element from a subcircuit, and the subcircuit file is stored outside the library file
New Subcircuit Element (Internal)  Create a new element from a subcircuit, and the subcircuit file is stored inside the library file

2.12.1 Creating a Secondary Image

It is possible that some users may find certain element images in the standard PSIM image library psimimage.lib different from what they are used to use. In this case, users can create their own secondary images.

A secondary image can be created for an element in either standard image library psimimage.lib or users’ own custom image libraries. Secondary images are saved in a secondary image library with the .lib2 extension.

To illustrate the process, a secondary image will be created in the library "mylib.lib2" for the "Diode" element in the standard image library.

• Go to Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit secondary image library files, and click on New library. In the dialog, define the secondary image library name as "mylib.lib2".

• Then select "mylib.lib2" and click on Edit selected library. The dialog window for editing secondary image library will appear.

• Click on the Add button. From the PSIM library tree, navigate to Power >> Switches, and select "Diode". The element "Diode" will appear in the list of the secondary images. The text "PSIMIMAGE" in front of the "Diode" text shows that this is for the diode element in the standard image library psimimage.lib.

• Highlight "Diode", and click on the Edit button to create the image.

• If this image is to be used as the default image for this element, click on the "Set as Default Image".

After the secondary image is created, this image will be available for selection in the PSIM schematic. For example, if a diode is placed on the schematic, double click to display the property dialog of the diode, then click on the Color tab. Click on the pull-down arrow, and two images will be displayed. One from the standard image library, and the other from the custom image library mylib.lib.

If the secondary image is selected, all the images of the same element will be automatically changed to the secondary image. The selected image will also be set as the default image when a schematic is created or loaded the next time.

To share the secondary images that one creates with other people, one just has to send to them the secondary image library file (with the .lib2 extension).
2.12.2 Adding a New Subcircuit Element into the Library

There are two ways to add a custom model to the PSIM library list. One is to have the model in the form of a subcircuit, and then place the schematic file in a folder called user defined in the PSIM directory, or in one of the sub-folders of the user defined folder. Any schematic files and sub-folders under the user defined folder will appear in the PSIM library list.

Another way is to add the custom model directly to an image library. The advantage of this approach is that the custom element will have the same look-and-feel as the standard PSIM elements, giving it a better interface. It is also possible to associate a help file to the custom model.

There are three main steps to add a new element, modeled in a subcircuit, into the library:

- Create the subcircuit model of the new element.
- Add this element to the PSIM library.
- Create an on-line help file for this new element.

To illustrate this process, a LC-filter element is used as an example.

**Step 1: Create Subcircuit**

The first step is to create the subcircuit of the new element in the same way as if the subcircuit is to be called by another circuit. For example, the subcircuit of the 2nd-order LC filter, called "LC_filter.sch", and its image are shown below:

![Subcircuit Image](image)

In this case, the inductance and capacitance values will be defined through the interface, and need to appear in the property window of the new LC filter element. Therefore, the parameter value for the inductance needs to be defined as a variable, in this case, \( L \), and the value for the capacitance as \( C \).

Then from **Subcircuit >> Edit Default Variable List**, add the variables \( L \) and \( C \) as the default variables. This step is necessary as the new element obtains the parameter information from the default variable list. The default variable list window should appear as follows:

![Default Variable List](image)

Here **Variable Label** is the text that describes the parameter, **Variable Name** is the variable that is used as the parameter value in the subcircuit, and **Variable Value** is the default value of the parameter. In the example, for
the inductor \( L \), the **Variable Label** is *Inductance*, the **Variable Name** is \( L \), and the **Variable Value** is 1m. For the capacitor \( C \), the **Variable Label** is Capacitance, the **Variable Name** is \( C \), and the **Variable Value** is 100\( \mu \)F.

After the file is created, place it in the "lib" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.

**Step2: Add the New Element to the PSIM Library:**

To add the subcircuit element into the PSIM library, follow these steps:

- Go to **Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit Library Files**, and choose the custom image library for the new element. Click on **New Library** to create a new image library, or select an existing library and click on **Edit Selected Library**.

- In the Library Editor, click on the button **New Element (Subcircuit)**. Enter the information to the dialog window as shown below:

![Subcircuit Element Dialog](image)

- **Name**: Name of the new element as it appears in the PSIM library
- **Description**: Description of the new element
- **File Path**: The location of the subcircuit schematic file "LC_filter.sch". The schematic file of the subcircuit must be placed in the "lib" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.
- **Input nodes**: Number of input nodes.
- **Output nodes**: Number of output nodes.
- **Hide (menu)**: Leave this box unchecked. If this box is checked, this element will not appear in the library.
- **Help File**: On-line help file associated with this element. This file must be placed in the "help" sub-folder in the PSIM directory. When the **Help** button is clicked in the property dialog window, this file will be displayed. This file can be a text file (which can be opened by a text editor such as NotePad) or a HTML file.

- Click on the buttons **Save Image Library** and **Update Menu**. The new element will appear in the library and will be ready to use.

**2.12.3 Adding a New DLL Element into the Library**

Similar to that of a subcircuit element, there are three main steps to add a new element, modeled in a DLL, into the PSIM library:

- Create the model in the DLL file.
- Add this element to the PSIM library.
- Create an on-line help file for this new element.

To illustrate this process, an inductor is used as an example.

**Creating the DLL:**

The first step is to create the inductance model in DLL. Please refer to the relevant section on how to create a custom DLL.

Here we assume that the DLL file, "inductor_model.dll", has already been created. It has one parameter called
"Inductance", and two connecting nodes. The file is placed in the "lib" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.

**Adding the New Element to the PSIM Library:**

To add the DLL element into the PSIM library, follow these steps:

- Go to **Edit >> Edit Library >> Edit Library Files**, and choose the library for the new element. Click on **New Library** to create a new image library, or select an existing library and click on **Edit Selected Library**.
- In the Library Editor, click on the button **New DLL File**. Enter the information to the dialog window as shown below:

```
Name: Name of the new inductor element as it appears in the PSIM library
Description: Description of the new inductor element
File Path: The location of the DLL file "inductor_model.dll" that models the new inductor element. The DLL file must be placed in the "lib" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.
Input Nodes: Number of input terminals of the new element.
Output Nodes: Number of output terminals of the new element.
Hide (menu): Leave this box unchecked. If this box is checked, this element will not appear in the library.
Help File: On-line help file associated with this element. This file must be placed in the "help" sub-folder in the PSIM directory. When the **Help** button is clicked in the property dialog window, this file will be displayed. This file can be a text file (which can be opened by a text editor such as NotePad) or a HTML file.
```

- In the next dialog window, set the new element size as: Width = 5, and Height = 2. Then create an image for this element, or accept the default image.
- Click on the buttons **Save Image Library** and **Update Menu**. The new element will appear in the library and will be ready to use.

The information regarding the number of parameters and the parameter description for the new inductor element is obtained from the DLL file automatically. In this case, the new element will have one parameter as "Inductance".
2.13 Creating a Symbol Library

With the Image Editor in the **Edit** menu, one can easily create good component images very quickly. These images can be used as secondary images of PSIM library elements, or images of subcircuits. One can also store these images in a symbol library for the purpose of circuit wiring diagrams. Note that such a schematic is solely for display purposes, and can not be simulated.

The figure below shows a hardware circuit diagram from a SPI A/D converter example.

![Circuit Diagram](image)

The blocks F28335, 74HCT138, and TLV1548 are all created by the Image Editor.

To illustrate how to create an image using the Image Editor, and save the image as a symbol into a custom library, we will create the image for the decoder 74HCT138 as shown below:

- In PSIM, create a new schematic window. Then choose **Edit >> Image Editor**. A rectangle will appear. Place the rectangle on the schematic, and press the Esc key to escape.
- Double click on the rectangle, and a dialog window will appear. In the **Main** tab, enter the data field as shown on the screen below. The **Library Part Name** is the name of the element as it appears in the library. The size of the block is 5 in width and 9 in height, without taking into account the length of the leads.
• Click on the Pins tab. In this tab, the connection pins will be defined. Click on the Add button, and define Location as "1 - Left", Name as "A", and Number as "1". Leave the boxes for Dot, clk, and Overline unchecked.

If the boxes are checked, for Dot, there will be a circle between the connection pin and the block; for clk, a symbol > will be added inside the block to indicate that it is a clock; and for Overline, an overline will be added to the name.

• Click on the Add button, and define Location as "2 - Left", Name as "B", and Number as "2". Repeat the same process for the rest of the pins. The dialog windows below show the definitions of all the connection pins.

• Once all the pins are added, go back to the Main tab. Click on Save in library, and select [New Library]. Enter the library name as "My Symbol", and specify the library file name as "My Symbol". The library "My Symbol" will appear under the Elements menu, and this library will contain the newly created element 74HCT138.
SIMVIEW is PSIM’s waveform display and post-processing program. The following shows simulation waveforms in the SIMVIEW environment.

SIMVIEW reads data in either ASCII text format or SIMVIEW binary format. The following shows a sample text data file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Isa</th>
<th>Isc</th>
<th>Isb</th>
<th>Tem_IM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.000000000E-006</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>7.145888260E-048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.000000000E-005</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>1.082981714E-046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.500000000E-005</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>0.000000000E+000</td>
<td>5.408644357E-046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.000000000E-005</td>
<td>1.139566166E+000</td>
<td>1.139566166E+000</td>
<td>1.139566166E+000</td>
<td>5.298226665E-015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.500000000E-005</td>
<td>5.072914178E-001</td>
<td>5.072914178E-001</td>
<td>5.072914178E-001</td>
<td>5.598226665E-015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Functions in each menu are explained in the following sections.

### 3.1 File Menu

The **File Menu** has the following functions:

- **Open**: Load a data file in ASCII text format (with .txt extension) or SIMVIEW binary format (with .smv extension)
- **Merge**: Merge another data file with the existing data file for display
- **Re-Load Data**: Re-load data from the same text file
- **Save As**: Save the waveforms to either binary data format or text format. When saving to the binary format, the current settings are also saved. In the FFT display, this will save the FFT results to a text file specified by the user.
- **Print**: Print the waveforms
- **Print Setup**: Set up the printer
- **Print Page Setup**: Set up the hardcopy printout size
- **Print Preview**: Preview the printout
- **Exit**: Quit SIMVIEW
When the data of a file are currently being displayed, if new data is available, by selecting **Re-Load Data**, new data will be loaded and waveforms will be re-drawn.

With the **Merge** function, data from multiple files can be merged together for display. For example, if one file contains the curves “I1” and “I2”, and another file contains the curves “V1” and “V2”, all four curves can be merged and displayed on one screen. If the second file also contains a curve with the same name “I1”, it will be modified to “I1_{\{second_file_name\}}” automatically where **second_file_name** is the name of the second file.

### 3.2 Edit Menu

The **Edit Menu** has the following functions:

- **Undo**: Go back to the previous X and Y axis settings
- **Copy to Clipboard**: Copy the waveforms to the clipboard either in metafile format or bitmap format.
- **View Data Points**: View the data points of the waveforms within the displayed range in a separate window. In this window, one can use the left mouse to highlight data points in rows or columns, then right mouse click and choose **Copy Selected** to copy the data to the clipboard. One could also just copy the row that the cursor is on by selecting **Copy Row**, or copy the entire data by selecting **Copy All**. One can then paste the copied data back in another program.

Note that the **Copy to Clipboard** function will copy the displayed waveforms on the screen to the clipboard. To save the memory and have the waveform image in black & white, first go to **Option** and de-select **Color** to have a black & white display, then copy the waveform to the clipboard.

### 3.3 Axis Menu

The **Axis Menu** has the following functions:

- **X Axis**: Change the settings of the X axis
- **Y Axis**: Change the settings of the Y axis
- **Choose X-Axis Variable**: By default, the first column of the data is selected as the X axis. However, other columns can also be selected as the X axis through this function.

The dialog box of the X/Y axis settings are shown below.

If the **Auto-Grid** box is checked, the number of axis divisions will be automatically determined. The data range and grid division, however, can be manually set.

The following figure shows a sine waveform is chosen as the X-axis versus a cosine waveform in the Y axis.
3.4 Screen Menu

The Screen Menu has the following functions:

- **New Window**: Create a duplicate window for the active window. This function is useful for viewing additional curves in a new window.
- **Add/Delete Curves**: Add or delete curves from the selected screen
- **Add Screen**: Add a new screen
- **Delete Screen**: Delete the selected screen
- **Plot Vector Diagram**: Plot the vector diagram. A vector is defined by its real and imaginary parts, and both come from the same variable list of the time-domain plot.
- **Display in Full Screen**: Expand the SIMVIEW window to full screen
- **Move Up**: Move the selected screen up
- **Move Down**: Move the selected screen down

A screen is selected by clicking the left mouse on top of the screen.

The property dialog window of curves is shown below.

![Property Dialog Window](image)

All the variables available for display are in the *Variables Available* box, and the variables currently being displayed are in the *Variables for Display* box. After a variable is highlighted in the *Variables Available* box, it can be added to the *Variables for Display* box by clicking on “Add ->”. Similarly, a variable can be removed from display by highlighting the variable and clicking on “<- Remove”.

In the Edit Box, mathematical expressions can be specified. A mathematical expression can contain brackets and is not case sensitive. The following math functions are allowed:

- `+` addition
- `-` subtraction
- `*` multiplication
- `/` division
- `^` to the power of [Example: `2^3 = 2*2*2`]
- `SQRT` square-root function
- `SIN` sine function
- `COS` cosine function
- `TAN` tangent function
ATAN  inverse tangent function
EXP  exponential (base e) [Example: EXP(x) = e^x]
LOG  logarithmic function (base e) [Example: LOG(x) = ln (x)]
LOG10 logarithmic function (base 10)
ABS  absolute function
SIGN  sign function [Example: SIGN(1.2) = 1; SIGN(-1.2) = -1]
AVG  moving average function that calculates the average of the curve up to the measured point.
AVGX periodic average function AVGX(y, Tp) where y is the curve name and Tp is the time interval where the average is calculated. Calculates the average of the curve y in each time segment with interval of the time segment as Tp. For example, AVGX(V1, 0.016667) will calculate the average of the curve V1 at the 60-Hz interval.
INT  integration function

Type an expression in the Edit Box and click the "Add ->" button to add the calculated curve to the screen. Highlight the expression on the right and click the "<- Remove" button, the expression will be moved into the Edit Box for further editing.

In the Curves tab, the curve properties, such as color, line thickness, marker symbol, and label, can be defined. A dialog window is shown below.

The default settings of the curve color, line thickness, and mark symbol are defined in Options >> Settings.

![Properties Dialog Box](image)
In the **Screen** tab, the screen properties, such as foreground/background colors, grid color, and font size/type, can be defined. A dialog window is shown below.

To plot a vector diagram, first perform the simulation. Then select **Plot Vector Diagram** and define the vectors. An example is used to illustrate this, as shown below.

In this circuit, the real and imaginary parts of two vectors \( V_1 \) and \( V_2 \) are created. The amplitude of \( V_1 \) is 1 and the amplitude of \( V_2 \) is 0.8. Vector \( V_2 \) is leading \( V_1 \) by 30 deg.

After simulation is completed, select **Screen >> Plot Vector Diagram**. In the dialog window, define the real
and imaginary parts for vectors V1 and V2. The dialog window will appear as follows:

Click on OK, and the vector plot will show as below on the right. The time-domain waveforms of the real and imaginary parts of V1 and V2 are shown below on the left.

There is a sliding bar at the bottom of the vector plot. By sliding it with the left mouse, one can replay the drawing of the vector plot. The percentage shows the vector positions with respect to the final position of the drawing. For example, in this case, the time is from 0 to 0.0167 sec. A sliding bar of 0% corresponds to the moment at 0 sec., and 100% corresponds to the moment at 0.0167 sec.
3.5 Measure Menu

The Measure Menu has the following functions:
- **Measure**: Enter the measure mode.
- **Mark Data Point**: Mark the x and y coordinate values of the data point in a selected curve.
- **Max**: Find the global maximum of a selected curve.
- **Min**: Find the global minimum of a selected curve.
- **Next Max**: Find the next local maximum of a selected curve.
- **Next Min**: Find the next local minimum of a selected curve.

The Measure function allows the measurement of waveforms. After Measure is selected, the measure dialog window will appear. By clicking the left mouse, a line will appear and the values of the waveforms will be displayed. By clicking the right mouse, another line will appear and the difference between the current position and the previous position, which is marked by the left mouse, will be measured. A SIMVIEW window with the measure dialog windows in these two modes are shown below.

Once Measure is selected, an individual curve can be selected by clicking on the pull-down menu on the Measure toolbar. The functions, Max, Min, Next Max, Next Min, Avg, and rms, can be used to evaluate the curve. Note that these functions are only enabled in the Measure mode.

3.6 Analysis Menu

The Analysis Menu has the following functions:
- **Perform FFT**: Perform the FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) analysis of time-domain waveforms.
- **Display in Time Domain**: Show the corresponding time-domain waveforms of FFT results.
- **Avg**: Calculate the average value.
- **Avg(|x|)**: Calculate the average of the absolute value.
- **RMS**: Calculate the rms value.
- **PF (power factor)**: Calculate the power factor of two waveforms on the screen. The screen must display two curves only. Assuming the first curve is a voltage and the second curve is a current, the power factor is defined as the real power P divided by the apparent power S produced by the voltage and current.

Note that the power factor is different from the displacement power factor, defined as cos(theta) where theta is the angle difference between the fundamental components of the voltage and current. When the voltage and current are pure sine waves without harmonics, the power factor is the same as the displacement power factor.
P (real power) Calculate the real power of two waveforms on the screen. The screen must display two curves only.

S (apparent power) Calculate the apparent power of two waveforms on the screen. The screen must display two curves only.

THD Calculate the THD (total harmonic distortion)

All these functions apply to the time interval currently being displayed on the screen.

By selecting Perform FFT, the harmonic spectrum (both the amplitudes and angle) of the time-domain waveforms can be calculated and displayed. To display the angles of the FFT results, double click on top of the screen (or click on the Add/Delete Curves icon). In the Select Curves tab, click on the Angle tab, and select the angles. The name convention of angles is Angle(D)_{name} for the angle in deg., and Angle(R)_{name} for the angle in rad., and name is the curve name in the time domain.

Note that, in order to obtain correct FFT results, the simulation must reach the steady state, and the data range must be restricted (using the manual range setting in the X Axis function) to have the integer number of the fundamental period. For example, for a 60-Hz fundamental frequency, the data length in display must be integer multiples of 1/60 sec.

3.7 View Menu

The View Menu has the following functions:

Zoom Zoom into a selected region
Re-Draw Re-draw the waveform using the auto-scale
Escape Escape from the Zoom or Measure mode
Standard Toolbar Enable/disable standard toolbar
Measure Toolbar Enable/disable measure toolbar
Status Bar Enable/disable status bar
Calculator Launch the Calculator in Simview

The interface of the calculator is shown below.

One key feature of the calculator is that it provides 9 memory spaces. By double clicking on a number in the Measure dialog window in Simview, the value will be automatically transferred to the calculator and stored in one of the memory spaces, starting from the top. In this way, data can be directly transferred to this calculator for calculation without the need to record them on a piece of paper.
3.8 Option Menu

The Option Menu has the following functions:

- **Options...**: Various options can be set here.
- **Grid**: Enable or disable the grid display
- **Color**: Set the curves to be either Color (default) or Black and White

The Options dialog window is shown below.

Default curve settings, such as colors, line thickness, and mark symbols, are defined. Also, default text settings, such as font size, color are defined.

If the option **Redraw x-axis when loading new data** is checked, the waveform will be redrawn with the new x-axis range when new data is loaded. If this option is not checked, the x-axis range will be unchanged.

If the option **Engineering Unit** is checked, in the Measure dialog window, curve values will be displayed in engineering unit with suffix such as u, m, k, M (for example, 12.3456u). If this option is not checked, the values will be displayed in scientific unit (for example, 1.23456e-5). The value of **Significant Digits** defines the number of digits after the decimal points.

Also, the right mouse action can be set to either **Show menu**, **Pan**, or **Zoom**.

3.9 Label Menu

The Label Menu has the following functions:

- **Text**: Place text on the screen
- **Line**: Draw a line
- **Dotted Line**: Draw a dotted line
- **Arrow**: Draw a line with arrow

To draw a line, first select **Line** from the Label menu. Then click the left mouse at the position where the line begins, and drag the mouse while keeping the left button pressed. Dotted lines and lines with arrows are drawn in the same way.

If one is in the Zoom or Measure mode, and wishes to edit a text or a label, one should first escape from the Zoom/Measure mode by selecting “Escape” in the “View” menu.

3.10 Settings Menu

The Settings Menu has the following functions:

- **Re-Load Settings**: Re-load the settings from the .ini file and apply to the current display
- **Save Settings**: Save the current settings to a file with the same file name but with the .ini extension
- **Save Temporary Settings**: Save the current settings temporarily. The temporary settings are not saved to any files, and are discarded when the document is closed.
When Simview loads a data file (.txt or .smv file), if the corresponding .ini file exists, it will load the settings in the .ini file.

The functions Load Temporary Settings and Save Temporary Settings are used in situations where one wants to save the settings temporarily and uses it shortly after. For example, when comparing one waveform with another, one can first save the temporary settings when displaying the first waveform. Then display the second waveform and load the temporary settings.

Favorites are a convenient way of storing particular graph settings to be used later. For example, assume that Simview shows two screens, with the top screen displaying V1 in the red color and with certain x-axis and y-axis ranges, and the bottom screen displaying V2 in the blue color with its own y-axis range. If this settings is likely to be used again in the future, the settings can be saved as a favorite and used later.

To apply a favorite to the current display, go to the Settings menu and choose the favorite from the list. Note that when applying the favorite, the number of screens currently on display must be the same as the number of screen in the favorite.

### 3.11 Exporting Data

FFT results can be saved to a text file. Both simulation results (*.txt) and FFT results (*.fft) are in text format and can be edited using a text editor (such as Microsoft NotePad), or exported to other software (such as Microsoft Excel).

For example, to load a simulate result file “chop-1q.txt” in Microsoft Excel, follow these steps:
- In Microsoft Excel, select Open from the File menu. Open the file “chop-1q.txt”.
- In the dialog window “Text Import Wizard - Step 1 of 3”, under Original data type, choose Delimited. Click on Next.
- In the dialog window “Text Import Wizard - Step 2 of 3”, under Delimiters, choose Space. Click on Next.
- In the dialog window “Text Import Wizard - Step 3 of 3”, under Column data format, choose General. Click on Finish.
The following chapters provide the detailed information of the PSIM library elements. This chapter focuses on the Power circuit components.

4.1 **Resistor-Inductor-Capacitor Branches**

PSIM provides several combinations of resistor, inductor, capacitor networks in the element library. 
- Individual resistor, inductor, and capacitor. These are multi-level models. Level-1 is basic component. Level-2 includes parasitic and leakage elements as lumped components in equivalent circuits.
- Combined R-L-C series branch
- Symmetrical 3-phase branches of resistor, inductor, capacitor, and their combinations

User can define initial conditions of inductor currents and capacitor voltages for individual component. But the initial inductor currents and capacitor voltages for three-phase branches are all set at zero.

4.1.1 **Individual Resistor**

**Image:**

<p>| Attributes of Level-1 Model: |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Rating</td>
<td>Voltage rating of the component, in V, for Level 2 model only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display. If this flag is set 1, the current flowing through this component will be saved to display in SIMVIEW and Runtime Graphs. The current is positive when it flows into the dotted terminal of the branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| Attributes of Level-2 Model: |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Rating</td>
<td>Voltage rating of the component, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Rating</td>
<td>Power rating of the component, in W.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance ESL</td>
<td>Equivalent series inductance (ESL), in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Capacitance</td>
<td>Equivalent parallel parasitic capacitance, in F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display. If this flag is set 1, the current flowing through this component will be saved to display in SIMVIEW and Runtime Graphs. The current is positive when it flows into the dotted terminal of the branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4.1.2 Individual Inductor

**Image:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance</td>
<td>Inductance, in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Current</td>
<td>Initial inductor current, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attributes of Level-2 Model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance</td>
<td>Inductance, in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak Current Rating</td>
<td>Peak current rating of the inductor, in A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Resistance</td>
<td>Equivalent series resistance (ESR), in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Resistance</td>
<td>Leakage resistance in parallel with the inductor, in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Capacitance</td>
<td>Parallel parasitic capacitance, in F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Current</td>
<td>Initial inductor current, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Equivalen Circuit:

**Image:**

### 4.1.3 Individual and Electrolytic Capacitors

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacitor</th>
<th>Capacitor (Electrolytic)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Attributes of Level-1 Model:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance</td>
<td>Capacitance, in F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Voltage</td>
<td>Initial capacitor voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attributes of Level-2 Model:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance</td>
<td>Capacitance, in F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Rating</td>
<td>Voltage rating of the component, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMS Current Rating</td>
<td>RMS current rating, in A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance ESR</td>
<td>Equivalent series resistance (ESR), in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance ESL</td>
<td>Equivalent series inductance (ESL), in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leakage Resistance</td>
<td>Leakage resistance, in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Voltage</td>
<td>Initial capacitor voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Equivalent Circuit:

4.1.4 Combined R-L-C Branch

Image:

Attributes for R-L-C Branch:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance</td>
<td>Inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance</td>
<td>Capacitance, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Current</td>
<td>Initial inductor current, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Cap. Voltage</td>
<td>Initial capacitor voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for branch current waveform display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For combined R-L-C branch, at least one of the parameters R, L, or C has to be a non-zero value.
4.1.5 3-Phase R, L, C, and Combination Branches

Images:

Attributes for 3-Phase R, L, C, and Combination Branches:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance</td>
<td>Inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance</td>
<td>Capacitance, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag_A; Current Flag_B; Current Flag_C</td>
<td>Current flags for Phase A, B, and C of three-phase branches, respectively. If this flag is set 1, the current flowing through this branch will be saved to the file for display in SIMVIEW. It will also be available for display in the runtime graphs (under Simulate &gt;&gt; Runtime Graphs). The dot in the image indicates phase A. The current is positive when it flows into the dotted terminal of the branch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.1.6 3-Phase AC Cable

The 3-phase ac cable model takes into account inductive coupling and capacitances between phases.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cable Length</td>
<td>Length of the cable, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Frequency</td>
<td>Operating frequency of the cable, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R_d</td>
<td>Positive sequence resistance R_d of the cable, in Ohm/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactance X_d</td>
<td>Positive sequence reactance X_d of the cable, in Ohm/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance C_d</td>
<td>Positive sequence capacitance C_d of the cable, in F/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R_o</td>
<td>Zero sequence resistance R_o of the cable, in Ohm/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reactance X_o</td>
<td>Zero sequence reactance X_o of the cable, in Ohm/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance C_o</td>
<td>Zero sequence capacitance C_o of the cable, in F/km</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the bottom node N or n on each side of the cable is the cable screen. It is generally connected to the ground on the side of the cable.

The cable parameters should be available from manufacturers’ datasheet. When they are not available,
assuming that each phase of the cable has a resistance of $R$, self inductance of $L$, and mutual inductance of $M$, the positive sequence and zero sequence parameters can be calculated as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
R_d &= R \\
X_d &= \omega \cdot (L - M) \\
R_o &= R \\
X_o &= \omega \cdot (L + 2M)
\end{align*}
\]

where $\omega = 2\pi f$ and $f$ is the operating frequency in Hz.

### 4.1.7 Rheostat

A rheostat is a resistor with a tap.

**Image:**

![Image of Rheostat](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Resistance</td>
<td>Total resistance of the rheostat $R$ (between Node $k$ and $m$), in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap Position (0 to 1)</td>
<td>The tap position $Tap$. The resistance between Node $k$ and $t$ is: $R*Tap$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the current that flows into Node $k$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.1.8 Saturable Inductor

A saturable inductor takes into account the saturation effect of the magnetic core.

**Image:**

![Image of Saturable Inductor](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current vs. Inductance</td>
<td>Characteristics of the current versus the inductance $(i_1, L_1), (i_2, L_2)$, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the current display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The nonlinear $B$-$H$ curve is represented by piecewise linear approximation. Since the flux density $B$ is proportional to the flux linkage $\lambda$ and the magnetizing force $H$ is proportional to the current $i$, the $B$-$H$ curve can be represented by the $\lambda$-$i$ curve instead, as shown below.
The inductance is defined as: \( L = \frac{\lambda}{i} \), the ratio of \( \lambda \) vs. \( i \) at each point. The saturation characteristics are defined by a series of data points as: \((i_1, L_1), (i_2, L_2), (i_3, L_3)\), etc.

Note that the defined saturation characteristics must be such that the flux linkage \( \lambda \) is monotonically increasing. That is, \( L_1 \cdot i_1 < L_2 \cdot i_2 < L_3 \cdot i_3 \), etc.

Also, similar to the saturation characteristics in the real world, the slope of each linear segment must be monotonically decreasing as the current increases.

In certain situations, circuits that contain saturable inductors may fail to converge. Connecting a very small capacitor across the saturable inductor may help the convergence.

### 4.1.9 Saturable Inductor (2)

A second model is provided to model a saturable inductor. As compared to the model in the previous section, this model takes into account the hysteresis loop.

#### Image:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Turns</td>
<td>Number of turns of the inductor winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding Resistance</td>
<td>Winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Cross Section Area</td>
<td>Core cross section area, in ( m^2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core Length</td>
<td>Effective core length, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Permeability</td>
<td>Relative permeability of the core material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flux Density at Saturation</td>
<td>Flux density ( B_{sat} ) at deep saturation, in T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Flux Density</td>
<td>Initial flux density ( B_{init} ), in T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coercive Force</td>
<td>Coercive force ( H_c ) at zero flux density, in A/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the current display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The extra node on the side of the inductor image gives the flux density of the core, in T. The node is a control node.

A saturable inductor \( B-H \) curve is shown below.
4.1.10 Coupled Inductors

Coupled inductors with two, three, four, five, and six branches are provided.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2-branch</th>
<th>3-branch</th>
<th>4-branch</th>
<th>5-branch</th>
<th>6-branch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="2-branch" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="3-branch" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="4-branch" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="5-branch" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="6-branch" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the small circle indicates the input terminal of inductor 1 while the small square, triangle, + sign, x sign, and * sign indicate the input terminal of inductor 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L_{ii} (self)</td>
<td>Self inductance of the inductor i, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L_{ij} (mutual)</td>
<td>Mutual inductance between Inductor i and j, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Current i</td>
<td>Initial current in Inductor i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag_i</td>
<td>Flag for the current printout in Inductor i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following shows a coupled inductor with two branches.

Let $L_{11}$ and $L_{22}$ be the self-inductances of Branch 1 and 2, and $L_{12}$ and $L_{21}$ the mutual inductances, the branch voltages and currents have the following relationship:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
v_1 \\
v_2
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
L_{11} & L_{12} \\
L_{21} & L_{22}
\end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix}
i_1 \\
\frac{d}{dt}i_2
\end{bmatrix}
$$

The mutual inductances between two windings are assumed to be always equal, i.e., $L_{12} = L_{21}$.

In the SPICE software, coupled inductors are defined by the self inductances and the coupling factors. For the coupled inductor with two branches, the coupling factor $K$ is defined as:

$$
K = \frac{L_{12}}{\sqrt{L_{11} \cdot L_{22}}}
$$

The mutual inductance is then calculated as:

$$
L_{12} = K \cdot \sqrt{L_{11} \cdot L_{22}}
$$

The coupling factor has a value between 0 and 1. When the coupling factor is 1, it is perfect coupling. Note that in PSIM, perfect coupling is not allowed. That is, the coupling factor cannot be equal to 1.
Also, when the leakage inductances are ignored (i.e. the coupling factor is close to 1), the self inductances are proportional to the turns ratio squared. That is, if Branch 1 has \( N_1 \) turns, and Branch 2 has \( N_2 \) turns:

\[
\frac{L_1}{L_2} = \frac{N_1^2}{N_2^2}
\]

**Example:**

Two mutually coupled inductors have the self inductances and mutual inductance as: \( L_{11} = 1 \text{ mH} \), \( L_{22} = 1.1 \text{ mH} \), and \( L_{12} = L_{21} = 0.9 \text{ mH} \). The coupling factor is: \( K = 0.86 \). The specification of this element will be:

| \( L_{11} \) (self) | 1m |
| \( L_{12} \) (mutual) | 0.9m |
| \( L_{22} \) (self) | 1.1m |

### 4.1.11 Nonlinear Elements

The following elements with nonlinear voltage-current relationship are provided:
- Resistance-type \([v = f(i)]\)
- Resistance-type with additional input \(x\) \([v = f(i,x)]\)
- Conductance-type \([i = f(v)]\)
- Conductance-type with additional input \(x\) \([i = f(v,x)]\)

The additional input \(x\) must be a voltage signal.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonlinear element</th>
<th>Nonlinear element (with additional input)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Nonlinear element" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Nonlinear element (with additional input)" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes:**

For resistance-type elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression (f(i)) or (f(i,x))</td>
<td>Expression of (v) in terms of (i) and (x) ([v = f(i)) or (v = f(i,x)])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression (df/di)</td>
<td>The derivative of the voltage (v) versus current (i), i.e. (df(i)/di)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Value (i_0)</td>
<td>The initial value of the current (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit of (i)</td>
<td>The lower limit of the current (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit of (i)</td>
<td>The upper limit of the current (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For conductance-type elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression (f(v)) or (f(v,x))</td>
<td>Expression of (i) in terms of (v) and (x) ([i = f(v)) or (i = f(v,x)])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression (df/dv)</td>
<td>Derivative of the current (i) versus voltage (v), i.e. (df(v)/dv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Value (v_0)</td>
<td>The initial value of the voltage (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit of (v)</td>
<td>The lower limit of the voltage (v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit of (v)</td>
<td>The upper limit of the voltage (v)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A good initial value and lower/upper limits will help the convergence of the solution.

**Example: Nonlinear Diode**

The nonlinear element (NONI) in the circuit above models a nonlinear diode. The diode current is expressed as a function of the voltage as: \( i = 10^{-14} \times (e^{40 \times v} - 1) \). In PSIM, the specifications of the nonlinear element will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression ( f(v) )</th>
<th>1e-14*(EXP(40*v)-1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression ( df/dv )</td>
<td>40e-14<em>EXP(40</em>v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Value ( v_o )</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit of ( v )</td>
<td>-1e3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit of ( v )</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.2 Switching Devices

There are two basic types of switching devices in PSIM. One is the switchmode type. It operates either in the cut-off region (off state) or saturation region (on state). The other is the linear type. It can operates in either cut-off, linear, or saturation region.

Switches in switchmode include the following:
- Diode and DIAC
- Thyristor and TRIAC
- Self-commutated switches:
  - npn and pnp bipolar junction transistor (BJT)
  - Insulated-Gate Bipolar Transistor (IGBT)
  - n-channel and p-channel Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor Field-Effect Transistor (MOSFET)
  - MOSFET with fixed on-resistance \( R_{DS(on)} \)
  - MOSFET with on-resistance \( R_{DS(on)} \) as a function of junction temperature
  - Gate-Turn-Off switch (GTO)
  - Bi-directional switch

Switchmode switch models are ideal. Both turn-on and turn-off transients are neglected.

A switch has an on-resistance of 10\( \mu \Omega \). When there is no R-L-C branch connected in parallel with the switch, a 10-M\( \Omega \) resistor will be connected across the switch internally. This resistance can be viewed as the off-state resistance. In certain cases, this resistance may need to be modified. To change the off-state resistance to, for example, 100 M\( \Omega \), connect a 100-M\( \Omega \) in parallel to the switch. Since PSIM sees that there is already a resistor in parallel to the switch, the 10-M\( \Omega \) resistor will not be added.

Snubber circuits are not required for switches.

Linear switches include the following:
- 3-State npn and pnp bipolar junction transistor
- 3-State n-channel and p-channel MOSFET
4.2.1 Diode

The conduction of a diode or LED is determined by circuit operating conditions. A diode has the following model levels:

- **Ideal:** A diode is turned on when the positive bias voltage is greater than the threshold voltage, and is turned off when the current drops to zero.
- **Level-2:** Includes leads parasitic inductance and reverse recovery parameters.
- **SPICE Model**
- **SPICE Subcircuit**

Note that SPICE models need the SPICE Module in the license.

The ideal and Level-2 models are described below.

**Image:**

![](image.png)

**Attributes of the Ideal Model:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Forward voltage $V_{d.th}$ in V. A diode starts to conduct when the positive bias voltage is greater than $V_{d.th}$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>On-resistance $R_{dh}$ in Ohm, after it starts to conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Flag for the initial diode position. If it is 0, the diode is off. If it is 1, the diode is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Current flag for diode current display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes of the Level-2 Model:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Forward voltage $V_{d.th}$ in V. A diode starts to conduct when the positive bias voltage is greater than $V_{d.th}$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>On-resistance $R_{dh}$ in Ohm, after it starts to conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parasitic Inductance</td>
<td>Series parasitic inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel Capacitance</td>
<td>Parallel capacitance between the diode anode and cathode, in F. If the capacitance value is 0, the capacitor is ignored and is removed from simulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward Current</td>
<td>Forward current $I_{fswd}$ under test conditions of diode reverse recovery characteristic, in A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak Reverse Current</td>
<td>Peak reverse current $I_{rm}$ under test conditions, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Slope</td>
<td>Current slope $dI/dt$ under test conditions, in A/sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Recovery Time</td>
<td>Reverse recovery time $trr$ under test conditions, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Flag for the initial diode position. If it is 0, the diode is off. If it is 1, the diode is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Current flag for diode current waveform display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ideal Diode v-i Characteristic:

![Ideal Diode v-i Characteristic](image)

Level-2 Diode Model Reverse Recovery Parameter Definitions:

![Level-2 Diode Model Reverse Recovery Parameter Definitions](image)

The reverse recovery time \( t_{rr} \) consists of two parts: \( t_a \) and \( t_b \). During the period \( t_a \), the current increases from 0 to \(-I_{rm}\). Based on JEDEC (Joint Electron Device Engineering Council), \( t_b \) is defined as the interval from the time of \(-I_{rm}\) to the time when the straight line from \(-I_{rm}\) through \(-0.25*I_{rm}\) (in red in the diagram) intersects with the time axis.

For further information on how to use the Level-2 model, please refer to the tutorial "Tutorial - Diode model with reverse recovery.pdf".

4.2.2 LED

A light-emitting diode (LED) emits light when it conducts. Its v-i characteristic is the same model as diode’s Level-1 model.

![Image of LED](image)

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forward Voltage</td>
<td>LED forward threshold voltage ( V_{d_{th}} ), in V. The LED starts to conduct and emit light when the positive bias voltage is greater than ( V_{d_{th}} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>LED on-resistance ( R_d ), in Ohm, after it starts to conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Flag for the initial LED position. If the flag is 0, the LED is off. If it is 1, the LED is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Current flag for LED current display.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.3 Zener Diode and DIAC

Zener:

A zener diode is modeled by a circuit as shown below.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breakdown Voltage</td>
<td>Breakdown voltage $V_B$ of the zener diode, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>Threshold voltage of the forward conduction (from anode to cathode), in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the forward conduction, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for zener current output (from anode to cathode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the zener diode is positively biased, it behaviors as a regular diode. When it is reverse biased, it will block the conduction as long as the cathode-anode voltage $V_{KA}$ is less than the breakdown voltage $V_B$. When $V_{KA}$ exceeds $V_B$, the voltage $V_{KA}$ will be clamped to $V_B$.

Note that when the zener is clamped, since the diode is modelled with an on-resistance of $10\mu\Omega$, the cathode-anode voltage will in fact be equal to: $V_{KA} = V_B + 10\mu\Omega \times I_{KA}$. Therefore, depending on the value of $I_{KA}$, $V_{KA}$ will be slightly higher than $V_B$. If $I_{KA}$ is very large, $V_{KA}$ can be substantially higher than $V_B$.

DIAC:

A DIAC is a bi-directional diode. A DIAC does not conduct until the breakover voltage is reached. After that, the DIAC goes into avalanche conduction, and the conduction voltage drop is the breakback voltage.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breakover Voltage</td>
<td>Voltage at which breakover occurs and the DIAC begins to conduct, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breakback Voltage</td>
<td>Conduction voltage drop, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Current flag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.4 Thyristor and TRIAC

A thyristor is controlled at turn-on. The turn-off is determined by circuit conditions.

A TRIAC is a device that can conduct current in both directions. It behaves in the same way as two opposite thyristors connected in parallel.

Images:

\[
\text{Thyristor}
\]

\[
\text{TRIAC}
\]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Drop</td>
<td>Thyristor conduction voltage drop, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holding Current</td>
<td>Minimum conduction current below which the device stops conducting and returns to the OFF state (for thyristor only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latching Current</td>
<td>Minimum ON state current required to keep the device in the ON state after the triggering pulse is removed (for thyristor only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Flag for the initial switch position (for thyristor only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for switch current output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that for the TRIAC device, the holding current and latching current are set to zero.

There are two ways to control a thyristor or TRIAC. One is to use a gating block, and the other is to use a switch controller. The gate node of a thyristor or TRIAC must be connected to either a gating block or a switch controller.

The following examples illustrate the control of a thyristor switch.

Examples: Control of a Thyristor Switch

This circuit on the left uses a switching gating block. The switching gating pattern and the frequency are pre-defined, and remain unchanged throughout the simulation. The circuit on the right uses an alpha switch controller. The delay angle alpha, in deg., is specified through the dc source in the circuit.
4.2.5 Bipolar Junction Transistor

A bipolar junction transistor (BJT) model has four levels: Ideal, 3-state, SPICE Model, and SPICE Subcircuit. The ideal and 3-state models are described below. Note that SPICE models need the SPICE Module in the license.

4.2.5.1 Ideal BJT

An ideal bipolar junction transistor model in PSIM is an ideal switching device. Its behavior is a little bit different from that of the device in real life. A BJT switch in PSIM will block reverse voltage (in this sense, it behaves like a GTO). Also, it is controlled by a voltage signal at the gate node, not a current.

An npn transistor is turned on when the gating signal is a logic high (when a voltage of 1V or higher is applied to the gate node) and the switch is positively biased (collector-emitter voltage is positive). A pnp transistor is turned on when the gating signal is a logic low and the switch is negatively biased (collector-emitter voltage is negative).

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>npn Transistor</th>
<th>pnp Transistor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Voltage</td>
<td>The saturation voltage $V_{ce_sat}$ for npn, or $V_{ec_sat}$ for pnp, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag (0: off; 1: on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag (0: no display; 1: display)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Control of a npn Bipolar Junction Transistor

The circuit on the left uses a gating block, and the one on the right uses an on-off switch controller.

If the switch is controlled by a control circuit signal, as shown in the circuit on the right side, an on-off switch controller must be used at the gate node.

The following shows another example of controlling the BJT switch. The circuit on the left shows how a BJT switch is controlled in the real life. In this case, the gating voltage $V_B$ is applied to the transistor base drive circuit through a transformer, and the base current determines the conduction state of the transistor.

This circuit can be modelled and implemented in PSIM as shown on the right. A diode, $D_{be}$, with a conduction voltage drop of 0.7V, is used to model the pn junction between the base and the emitter. When the base current exceeds 0 (or a certain threshold value, in which case the base current will be compared to a dc source), the comparator output will be 1, applying the turn-on pulse to the transistor through the on-off switch controller.
4.2.5.2 3-State BJT

A 3-state BJT model is a linear switch. It can operate in either cut-off (off state), linear, or saturation (on state) region.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current Gain beta</td>
<td>Transistor current gain $\beta$, defined as: $\beta = I_c/I_b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bias Voltage $V_r$</td>
<td>Forward bias voltage, in V, between base and emitter for the npn transistor, or between emitter and base for the pnp transistor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{ce,sat}$ [or $V_{ec,sat}$ for pnp]</td>
<td>Saturation voltage, in V, between collector and emitter for the npn transistor, and between emitter and collector for the pnp transistor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The properties of an npn transistor in these regions are:
- Cut-off region: $V_{be} < V_r$; $I_b = 0$; $I_c = 0$
- Linear region: $V_{be} = V_r$; $I_c = \beta I_b$; $V_{ce} > V_{ce,sat}$
- Saturation region: $V_{be} = V_r$; $I_c < \beta I_b$; $V_{ce} = V_{ce,sat}$

where $V_{be}$ is the base-emitter voltage, $V_{ce}$ is the collector-emitter voltage, and $I_c$ is the collector current.

The properties of a pnp transistor in these regions are:
- Cut-off region: $V_{eb} < V_r$; $I_b = 0$; $I_c = 0$
- Linear region: $V_{eb} = V_r$; $I_c = \beta I_b$; $V_{ec} > V_{ec,sat}$
- Saturation region: $V_{eb} = V_r$; $I_c < \beta I_b$; $V_{ec} = V_{ec,sat}$

where $V_{ec}$ is the emitter-base voltage, $V_{ec}$ is the emitter-collector voltage, and $I_c$ is the collector current.

Note that for 3-state npn/pnp BJT, the base node (gate node) is a power node, and must be connected to a power circuit component (such as a resistor or a source). It can not be connected to a gating block or a switch controller.
Examples: Circuits Using the Linear BJT

Examples below illustrate the use of linear BJT. The circuit on the left is a linear voltage regulator circuit, and the transistor operates in the linear mode. The circuit on the right is a simple test circuit.

4.2.6 MOSFET

A MOSFET model has 6 levels: Ideal, Level-1, and Level2, SPICE Model, SPICE Subcircuit, SPICE Subcircuit (4-pin), and SPICE Subcircuit (5-pin). The ideal, Level-1, and Level-2 models are described in the sections below. Note that SPICE models need the SPICE Module in the license.

4.2.6.1 Ideal MOSFET

An ideal MOSFET consists of an active switch with an anti-parallel diode. The MOSFET is turned on when the gating signal is a logic high (when a voltage of 1V or higher is applied to the gate node) and the switch is positively biased (drain-source voltage is positive). It is turned off whenever the gating signal is low or the current drops to zero.

The p-channel MOSFET is turned on when the gating signal is a logic low and it is negatively biased (drain-source voltage is negative).

The switches MOSFET \( (R_{DS(on)}) \) and p-MOSFET \( (R_{DS(on)}) \) have on-resistance as a function of the junction temperature. In the images of MOSFET \( (R_{DS(on)}) \) and p-MOSFET \( (R_{DS(on)}) \), the node on top of the gate node is for defining the junction temperature. A voltage signal at this node will define the junction temperature \( T_j \) in °C. For example, a voltage value of 25V would mean a junction temperature of 25°C. The on-resistance of the MOSFET is a function of the junction temperature, as expressed below:

\[
R_{DS(on)} = R_{DS(on),b} \cdot (1 + K_T \cdot (T_j - T_{j,b}))
\]

A switch can be controlled by either a gating block or a switch controller. They must be connected to the gate (base) node of the switch.

Images:

Attributes for MOSFET and p-MOSFET:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On Resistance</td>
<td>The on resistance ( R_{ds_on} ) of the MOSFET, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Anti-parallel diode forward threshold voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Power Circuit Components

4.2.6.2 Level-1 MOSFET

A Level-1 MOSFET is a linear switch that can operate in three states: cut-off, active, or ohmic state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tj at Test</td>
<td>Junction temperature $T_{j,b}$ at test, in °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS(on) at Test</td>
<td>On-resistance $R_{DS(on),b}$ at test, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Coefficient</td>
<td>Temperature coefficient $K_T$ of the on-resistance, in 1/°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Anti-parallel diode forward threshold voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>Anti-parallel diode on resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag for the transistor only (0: off; 1: on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag for the whole module (the transistor plus the diode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following examples illustrate the control of a MOSFET switch.

The circuit on the left uses a gating block, and the one on the right uses an on-off switch controller. The gating signal is determined by the comparator output.

**Attributes for MOSFET ($R_{DS(on)}$) and p-MOSFET ($R_{DS(on)}$):**

The circuit on the left uses a gating block, and the one on the right uses an on-off switch controller. The gating signal is determined by the comparator output.

**4.2.6.2 Level-1 MOSFET**

A Level-1 MOSFET is a linear switch that can operate in three states: cut-off, active, or ohmic state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MOSFET</th>
<th>p-MOSFET</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![MOSFET Image]</td>
<td>![p-MOSFET Image]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance $R_{DS(on)}$ of the MOSFET, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Voltage $V_{gs(th)}$</td>
<td>Threshold voltage of the gate-to-source voltage, in V, beyond which the MOSFET starts to conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transconductance $g_m$</td>
<td>Transconductance $g_m$ of the MOSFET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Forward voltage of the anti-parallel diode, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the anti-parallel diode, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A linear MOSFET device is controlled by the gate-to-source voltage $V_{gs}$. It can operate in one of the three regions: cut-off (off state), active, and ohmic region (on state).

The properties of an n-channel MOSFET device in these regions are:
- Cut-off region: $V_{gs} < V_{gs(th)}$; $I_d = 0$
- Active region: $V_{gs} > V_{gs(th)}$ and $V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)} < V_{ds}$; $I_d = g_m (V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)})$
- Ohmic region: $V_{gs} > V_{gs(th)}$ and $V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)} > V_{ds}$; $I_d = V_{ds} / R_{DS(on)}$

where $V_{gs}$ is the gate-source voltage, $V_{ds}$ is the drain-source voltage, and $I_d$ is the drain current.

The properties of a p-channel MOSFET device in these regions are:
- Cut-off region: $V_{gs} > V_{gs(th)}$; $I_d = 0$
- Active region: $V_{gs} < V_{gs(th)}$ and $V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)} > V_{ds}$; $I_d = g_m (V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)})$
- Ohmic region: $V_{gs} < V_{gs(th)}$ and $V_{gs} - V_{gs(th)} < V_{ds}$; $I_d = V_{ds} / R_{DS(on)}$

Note that for MOSFET, the gate node is a power node, and must be connected to a power circuit component (such as a resistor or a source). It can not be connected to a gating block or a switch controller.

4.2.6.3 Level-2 MOSFET

A Level-2 MOSFET takes the intrinsic and parasitic components into consideration.

Images:

![MOSFET](image1.png)

![p-MOSFET](image2.png)

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$V_{breakdown}$ (drain-source)</td>
<td>Maximum drain-source voltage without causing avalanche breakdown, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance $R_{DS(on)}$ of the MOSFET, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Threshold Voltage $V_{gs(th)}$</td>
<td>Threshold voltage of the gate-to-source voltage, in V, above which, the MOSFET starts to conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Gate Resistance</td>
<td>Internal gate resistance, in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transconductance $g_m$</td>
<td>Transconductance $g_m$ of the MOSFET.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance $C_{gs}$</td>
<td>Gate-to-source intrinsic capacitance, in F.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the Level-2 MOSFET model, the capacitances $C_{gs}$, $C_{gd}$, and $C_{ds}$ can be roughly calculated from the input capacitance $C_{iss}$, $C_{oss}$, and $C_{rss}$ from the datasheet as below:

$$C_{gs} = C_{iss} - C_{rss}$$
$$C_{gd} = C_{rss}$$
$$C_{ds} = C_{oss} - C_{rss}$$

These capacitance values may need to be adjusted to obtain the desired transient response.

Note that the gate node is a power node, and must be connected to a power circuit component (such as a resistor or a source). It cannot be connected to a gating block or a switch controller.

### 4.2.7 IGBT

An IGBT model has 3 levels: Ideal, Level-2, and SPICE Subcircuit. The ideal and Level-2 models are described in the sections below. Note that the SPICE model needs the SPICE Module in the license.

#### 4.2.7.1 Ideal IGBT

An ideal IGBT switch consists of an active switch with an anti-parallel diode. It is turned on when the gating signal is high (when a voltage of 1V or higher is applied to the gate node) and the switch is positively biased (collector-emitter voltage is positive). It is turned off whenever the gating signal is low or the current drops to zero.

**Image:**

![Image of IGBT schematic]

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Voltage</td>
<td>Saturation voltage $V_{ce_sat}$ of the IGBT, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transistor Resistance</td>
<td>Transistor on resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Forward Voltage</td>
<td>Anti-parallel diode forward threshold voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>Anti-parallel diode on resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag for the transistor only (0: off; 1: on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag for the whole module (the transistor plus the diode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.7.2 Level-2 IGBT

A Level-2 IGBT model takes into account the turn-on and turn-off transient.

Image:

![Level-2 IGBT Diagram]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Vce</td>
<td>Maximum collector-emitter voltage Vce rating, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Vec</td>
<td>Maximum emitter-collector voltage Vec rating, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If IGBT has an anti-parallel diode, this voltage will be the diode forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conduction threshold voltage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>Gate threshold voltage Vge_th, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transconductance</td>
<td>Transconductance of the IGBT, in S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall Time</td>
<td>Fall time of the current when IGBT is turned off, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance Cies</td>
<td>Input capacitance Cies, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance Coes</td>
<td>Output capacitance Coes, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance Cres</td>
<td>Reverse transfer capacitance Cres, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rce_on</td>
<td>Collector-emitter on resistance Rce_on, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vce_threshold</td>
<td>Collector-emitter threshold voltage Vce_th, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Gate Resistance</td>
<td>Internal gate resistance Rgate, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag for the whole module (the transistor plus the diode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more information on how to use this model, please refer to the tutorial "Tutorial - IGBT Level-2 model.pdf".

4.2.8 IGBT-RB

An IGBT-RB switch consist of an active switch with reverse blocking capability and without an anti-parallel diode. It is turned on when the gating signal is high (when a voltage of 1V or higher is applied to the gate node) and the switch is positively biased (collector-emitter voltage is positive). It is turned off whenever the gating signal is low or the current drops to zero.

Two versions of IGBT-RB are provided: a single switch, and a dual package with two back-to-back switches.

Images:
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Voltage</td>
<td>Saturation voltage $V_{ce_sat}$ of the IGBT, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transistor Resistance</td>
<td>Transistor on resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag for the switch, or in the case of the dual package, for Switch 1 or 2 (0: off; 1: on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or Initial Position 1 or 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag for the whole module (the transistor plus the diode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the dual package, when the element is placed in the upright position, Switch 1 is on the left and Switch 2 is on the right.

### 4.2.9 GTO

A GTO switch is a symmetrical device with both forward-blocking and reverse-blocking capabilities.

Images:

![GTO Switch Diagram]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Drop</td>
<td>GTO conduction voltage drop, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag (0: off; 1: on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Switch current flag (0: no display; 1: display)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.2.10 Bi-Directional Switches

A bi-directional switch conducts current in both directions.

Three types of bi-directional switches are provided: single-phase switch, three-phase switch, and push button switch.

Images:

![Bi-Directional Switch Diagrams]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position</td>
<td>Initial switch position flag (for single switch only).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position (for Phase $A/B/C$)</td>
<td>Initial switch position for Phase $A$, or $B$, or $C$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the 3-phase switch image, the phase with a dot is Phase A.

For single and 3-phase bi-directional switches, they are on when the gating signal is high, and are off when the gating signal is low, regardless of the voltage bias conditions. For the push button switch, the switch position is set directly from the parameter input.

### 4.2.11 Switch Gating Block

A switch gating block defines the gating pattern of a switch or a switch module. The gating pattern can be specified either directly (the element is called *Gating Block* in the library) or in a text file (the element is called *Gating Block (file)* in the library).

Note that a switch gating block can be connected to the gate node of a switch ONLY. It can not be connected to any other elements.

#### Image:

![Switch Gating Block Image]

#### Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Operating frequency of the switch or switch module connected to the gating block, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points</td>
<td>Number of switching points (for the <em>Gating Block</em> element only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching Points</td>
<td>Switching points, in deg. If the frequency is zero, the switching points is in second. (for the <em>Gating Block</em> element only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File for Gating Table</td>
<td>Name of the file that stores the gating table (for the <em>Gating Block (file)</em> element only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of switching points is defined as the total number of switching actions in one period. Each turn-on or turn-off action is counted as one switching point. For example, if a switch is turned on and off once in one cycle, the number of switching points will be 2.

For the *Gating Block (file)* element, the file for the gating table must be in the same directory as the schematic file. The gating table file has the following format:

```
n
G1
G2
...
Gn
```

where G1, G2, ..., Gn are the switching points.

#### Example:

Assume that a switch operates at 2000 Hz and has the following gating pattern in one period:

```
0  180  360
35  92  175  187  345  357
```

(deg.)
The specification of the Gating Block element for this switch will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>2000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching Points</td>
<td>35. 92. 175. 187. 345. 357.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The gating pattern has 6 switching points (3 pulses). The corresponding switching angles are 35°, 92°, 175°, 187°, 345°, and 357°, respectively.

If the Gating Block (file) element is used instead, the specification will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>2000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File for Gating Table</td>
<td>test.tbl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The file “test.tbl” will contain the following:

- 6
- 35.
- 92.
- 175.
- 187.
- 345.
- 357.

4.2.12 Single-Phase Switch Modules

Built-in single-phase diode bridge module and thyristor bridge module are provided. The images and internal connections of the modules are shown below.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diode Bridge</td>
<td>Threshold voltage of the diode, or forward voltage drop of the thyristor, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the diode, in Ohm (for diode bridges only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position_i</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag_i</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Node \( C_t \) at the bottom of the thyristor module is the gating control node for Switch 1. For the thyristor module, only the gating signal for Switch 1 needs to be specified. The gating signals for other switches will be derived internally in the program.

Similar to the single thyristor switch, a thyristor bridge can also be controlled by either a gating block or an alpha controller, as shown in the following examples.

**Examples: Control of a Thyristor Bridge**

The gating signal for the circuit on the left is specified through a gating block, and the gating signal for the
circuit on the right is provided through an alpha controller. A major advantage of the alpha controller is that the delay angle alpha of the thyristor bridge, in deg., can be directly controlled.

4.2.13 3-Phase Switch Modules

The following figure shows 3-phase switch modules and the internal circuit connections. A 3-phase voltage source inverter module VSI3 consists of either MOSFET-type or IGBT-type switches. A current source inverter module CSI3 consists of GTO-type switches, or equivalently IGBT in series with diodes.

Images:
**Attributes** for the diode bridge:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diode Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>Threshold voltage drop of the diode, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the diode, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position (i)</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag (i)</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes** for thyristor bridges:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Drop</td>
<td>Conduction voltage drop of the thyristor, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position (i)</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag (i)</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes** for VSI3 bridge (with MOSFET switches):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the MOSFET transistor, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>Threshold voltage drop of the diode, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the diode, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position (i)</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag (i)</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes** for VSI3 bridge (with IGBT switches):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Voltage</td>
<td>Saturation voltage (V_{ce_sat}) of the IGBT transistor, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transistor Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the IGBT transistor, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>Threshold voltage drop of the anti-parallel diode, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>On resistance of the anti-parallel diode, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position (i)</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag (i)</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes** for the CSI3 bridge:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Drop</td>
<td>Forward conduction voltage drop of the switch, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Forward on resistance of the switch, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Init. Position (i)</td>
<td>Initial position for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag (i)</td>
<td>Current flag for Switch (i)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similar to single-phase modules, only the gating signal for Switch 1 need to be specified for three-phase modules. Gating signals for other switches will be automatically derived. For the 3-phase half-wave thyristor bridge, the phase shift between two consecutive switches is 120°. For all other bridges, the phase shift is 60°. Thyristor bridges can be controlled by an alpha controller. Similarly, voltage/current source inverters can be
controlled by a PWM lookup table controller. The following examples illustrate the control of three-phase thyristor and voltage source inverter modules.

**Example: Control of 3-Phase Thyristor and VSI Modules**

The thyristor circuit on the left uses an alpha controller. For a three-phase circuit, the zero-crossing of the voltage $V_{ac}$ corresponds to the moment when the delay angle alpha is equal to zero. This signal is used to provide synchronization to the controller.

The circuit on the right uses a PWM lookup table controller. The PWM patterns are stored in a lookup table in a text file. The gating pattern is selected based on the modulation index. Other inputs of the PWM lookup table controller include the delay angle, the synchronization, and the enable/disable signal. A detailed description of the PWM lookup table controller is given in the *Switch Controllers* section.

### 4.3 Transformers

#### 4.3.1 Ideal Transformer

An ideal transformer has no losses and no leakage flux.

**Images:**

![Transformer Diagram](image)

The winding with the larger dot is the primary, and the other winding is the secondary.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Np (primary)</td>
<td>No. of turns of the primary winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ns (secondary)</td>
<td>No. of turns of the secondary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since the turns ratio is equal to the ratio of the rated voltages, the number of turns can be replaced by the rated voltage at each side.
### 4.3.2 Single-Phase Transformers

Single-phase transformers with 1 or 2 primary windings and 1 to 6 secondary windings are provided.

**Images:**

In the images, \( p \) refers to primary, \( s \) refers to secondary, and \( t \) refers to tertiary. The winding with the largest dot is the primary winding or first primary winding. For the multiple winding transformers, the sequence of the windings is from the top to the bottom. For the transformers with 2 or 3 windings, the attributes are as follows.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( R_p ) (primary); ( R_s ) (secondary); ( R_t ) (tertiary)</td>
<td>Resistance of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_p ) (pri. leakage); ( L_s ) (sec. leakage); ( L_t ) (ter. leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in H (seen from the primary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_m ) (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( N_p ) (primary); ( N_s ) (secondary); ( N_t ) (tertiary)</td>
<td>No. of turns of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the resistances and inductances are referred to the primary winding side. If there are multiple primary windings, they are referred to the first primary winding side.

For a transformer with more than 1 primary or more than 3 secondary windings, the attributes are as follows.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( R_{p,i} ) (primary ( i )); ( R_{s,i} ) (secondary ( i ))</td>
<td>Resistance of the ( i )th primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_{p,i} ) (pri. ( i ) leakage); ( L_{s,i} ) (sec. ( i ) leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the ( i )th primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in H (referred to the first primary winding)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_m ) (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H (seen from the first primary winding)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( N_{p,i} ) (primary ( i )); ( N_{s,i} ) (secondary ( i ))</td>
<td>No. of turns of the ( i )th primary/secondary/tertiary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All the resistances and inductances are referred to the first primary winding side.

**Modeling of a Transformer:**

A transformer is modeled as coupled inductors. For example, a single-phase two-winding transformer is modeled as two coupled inductors. The equivalent circuit can be shown as:

In the circuit, \( R_p \) and \( R_s \) are the primary and secondary winding resistances; \( L_p \) and \( L_s \) are the primary and secondary winding leakage inductances; and \( L_m \) is the magnetizing inductance. All the values are referred to the primary side.

**Example:**

A single-phase two-winding transformer has a winding resistance of 0.002 Ohm and leakage inductance of 1 mH at both the primary and the secondary side (all the values are referred to the primary). The magnetizing inductance is 100 mH, and the turns ratio is \( N_p:N_s = 220:440 \). The transformer will be specified as:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( R_p ) (primary)</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R_s ) (secondary)</td>
<td>2m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_p ) (primary)</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_s ) (secondary)</td>
<td>1m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_m ) (magnetizing)</td>
<td>100m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( N_p ) (primary)</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( N_s ) (secondary)</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.3.3 3-Phase Transformers

Two-winding and three-winding transformer modules are provided, as shown below. They all have 3-leg cores.
- 3-phase transformer (windings unconnected)
- 3-phase Y/Y and Y/\( \Delta \) connected transformers
- 3-phase 3-winding transformer (windings unconnected)
- 3-phase 3-winding Y/Y/\( \Delta \) and Y/\( \Delta /\Delta \) connected transformers
- 3-phase 3-winding Y/Z1, Y/Z2, \( \Delta /\Delta \), and \( \Delta /Z2 \) phase-shifting transformers
- 3-phase 4-winding transformer (windings unconnected)
- 3-phase 6-winding transformer (windings unconnected)
Attributes for all transformers except phase-shifting transformers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_p$ (primary); $R_s$ (secondary); $R_t$ (tertiary)</td>
<td>Resistance of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_p$ (pri. leakage); $L_s$ (sec. leakage); $L_t$ (ter. leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_m$ (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H (seen from the primary side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_p$ (primary); $N_s$ (secondary); $N_t$ (tertiary)</td>
<td>No. of turns of the primary/secondary/tertiary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attributes for phase-shifting transformers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_p$ (primary); $R_{s1}$ (secondary 1); $R_{s2}$ (secondary 2)</td>
<td>Resistance of the primary/1st secondary/2nd secondary winding, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_p$ (primary leakage); $L_{s1}$ (secondary 1 leakage); $L_{s2}$ (secondary 2 leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the primary/1st secondary/2nd secondary winding, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_m$ (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H (seen from the primary side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_p$ (primary); $N_{s1}$ (secondary 1); $N_{s2}$ (secondary 2)</td>
<td>Number of turns of the primary/1st secondary/2nd secondary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, $P$ refers to primary, $S$ refers to secondary, and $T$ refers to tertiary. All resistances and inductances are referred to the primary or the first primary winding side.

Three-phase transformers are modeled in the same way as single-phase transformers.

For the 3-phase phase-shifting transformers, let the angle $\delta$ be the phase difference between the secondary line voltage $V_{ab}$ and the primary line voltage $V_{AB}$. The relationship between the angle and the winding turns are:

For the Y/Z1 transformer:

$$\frac{N_{s2}}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sin(30^\circ - \delta)}{\sin(30^\circ + \delta)}, \quad 0^\circ \leq \delta \leq 30^\circ$$

$$\frac{N_p}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{1}{2 \sin(30^\circ + \delta)} \cdot \frac{V_{AB}}{V_{ab}}$$

For the Y/Z2 transformer:

$$\frac{N_{s2}}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sin(30^\circ - |\delta|)}{\sin(30^\circ + |\delta|)}, \quad -30^\circ \leq \delta \leq 0^\circ$$

$$\frac{N_p}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{1}{2 \sin(30^\circ + |\delta|)} \cdot \frac{V_{AB}}{V_{ab}}$$

For the Delta/Z1 transformer:

$$\frac{N_{s2}}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sin(|\delta|)}{\sin(60^\circ - |\delta|)}, \quad -30^\circ \leq \delta \leq 0^\circ$$

$$\frac{N_p}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2 \sin(60^\circ - |\delta|)} \cdot \frac{V_{AB}}{V_{ab}}$$

For the Delta/Z2 transformer:

$$\frac{N_{s2}}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sin(60^\circ - |\delta|)}{\sin(|\delta|)}, \quad -60^\circ \leq \delta \leq -30^\circ$$

$$\frac{N_p}{N_{s1} + N_{s2}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2 \sin(|\delta|)} \cdot \frac{V_{AB}}{V_{ab}}$$
The table below shows typical transformer turns ratios and delay angles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>d (deg)</th>
<th>$N_{s2}/(N_{s1}+N_{s2})$</th>
<th>$N_p/(N_{s1}+N_{s2}) * V_{ab}/V_{AB}$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y/Z1</td>
<td>Y/Z2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.227</td>
<td>0.653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-15</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-20</td>
<td>0.227</td>
<td>0.532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-30</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-40</td>
<td>0.532</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-45</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>1.225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-60</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.3.4 3-Phase Transformer with Saturation

A 3-phase 3-winding transformer that can take into account saturation and residual flux is provided.

**Image:**

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating Voltage (phase)</td>
<td>Transformer primary side rms voltage per phase under the circuit operating condition, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Frequency</td>
<td>Operating frequency of the transformer, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_p$ (primary)</td>
<td>Resistance of the primary winding, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_p$ (pri. leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the primary winding, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (secondary)</td>
<td>Resistance of the secondary winding, in Ohm (referred to the primary side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_s$ (sec. leakage)</td>
<td>Leakage inductance of the secondary winding, in H (referred to the primary side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_m$ (core losses)</td>
<td>Resistance that represents transformer core losses, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$I_m$ vs. $L_m$</td>
<td>Values of the magnetizing current $I_m$ (in A) vs. the magnetizing inductance $L_m$ (in H) that defines the magnetizing characteristics seen from the primary winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase A Residual Flux</td>
<td>Phase A residual flux, in per unit value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase B Residual Flux</td>
<td>Phase B residual flux, in per unit value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase C Residual Flux</td>
<td>Phase C residual flux, in per unit value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_p$ (primary)</td>
<td>Number of turns of the primary winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_s$ (secondary)</td>
<td>Number of turns of the secondary winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All the resistances and inductances are referred to the primary side.

In the images, \( p \) refers to the primary side and \( s \) refers to the secondary side. The node \( en \) is a control node, to be connected to a control logic signal. The moment when the signal changes from 0 to 1 indicates the moment that the transformer is energized.

Note that the operating voltage refers to the voltage per phase in the actual operating condition, not necessarily the rated voltage. For example, if a transformer rated at 63kV (primary side line-to-line rms) operates under the rated condition, and if the primary winding is connected in Y, the operating voltage per phase will be \( 63,000/\sqrt{3} \) V. If the primary winding is connected in delta, the operating voltage per phase will be 63,000V. If the same transformer is connected in delta but the actual operating voltage is only 60,000V, for example, the operating voltage per phase will be 60,000V instead.

### 4.4 Magnetic Elements

A set of magnetic elements, including winding, leakage flux path, air gap, linear core, and saturable core, is provided to model magnetic devices. These elements are the basic building blocks of magnetic equivalent circuits, and they provide a very powerful and convenient way of modeling any types of magnetic devices.

Different unit systems have been used in the magnetic circuit analysis. The table below shows magnetic quantities in the SI (System International) and the mixed CGS (Centimeter Gram Second) unit systems, and their conversion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>SI Unit</th>
<th>CGS Unit</th>
<th>CGS-SI Conversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flux ( \phi )</td>
<td>Weber</td>
<td>Maxwell</td>
<td>1 Weber = ( 10^8 ) Maxwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flux Density ( B )</td>
<td>Tesla</td>
<td>Gauss</td>
<td>1 Tesla = ( 10^4 ) Gauss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field Intensity ( H )</td>
<td>A*Turns/m</td>
<td>Oersted</td>
<td>1 A*Turns/m = ( \frac{4\pi}{1000} ) Oersted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetomotive Force (mmf) ( F )</td>
<td>A*Turns</td>
<td>Gilbert</td>
<td>1 A*Turns = ( \frac{4\pi}{10} ) Gilbert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeability ( \mu_o ) (in space)</td>
<td>( 4\pi \times 10^{-7} )</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>( 4\pi \times 10^{-7} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.4.1 Winding

A winding element provides the interface between the electric circuit and the magnetic equivalent circuit.

**Image:**

```
\[ E_1 \quad M_1 \]
\[ E_2 \quad M_2 \]
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Turns</td>
<td>No. of turns of the winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding Resistance</td>
<td>Winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This element represents a winding on a magnetic core. The two electric nodes (\( E_1 \) and \( E_2 \)) are connected to an electric circuit, while the two magnetic nodes (\( M_1 \) and \( M_2 \)) are connected to other magnetic elements (such as leakage flux path, air gap, and magnetic core).
4.4.2 Leakage Flux Path

This element models the flow path of the leakage flux.

**Image:**

\[
M_1 \quad \rightarrow \quad \longrightarrow \quad \leftarrow \quad M_2
\]

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance Factor ( A_L )</td>
<td>Inductance factor ( A_L ), in H, defined as the inductance per turn squared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance for Losses</td>
<td>Resistance ( R ), in Ohm, that represents the losses due to the leakage flux.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag of the current that flows through the resistor ( R )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The resistance \( R \) represents the losses due to the leakage flux.

Assuming that the mmf (magnetomotive force) applied across the leakage flux path is \( F \), the electric equivalent circuit of the leakage flux path is as follows:

\[
F \quad \rightarrow \quad i \quad \downarrow \quad A_L \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
\quad \quad \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad R
\]

The mmf, in the form of a voltage source, applies across the capacitor (the capacitance is \( A_L \)) and the resistor \( R \).

Let the current flowing through this branch be \( i \), and the rms value be \( I_{rms} \), the relationship between the losses due to the leakage flux and the resistance \( R \) is:

\[
P_{loss} = I_{rms}^2 \cdot R
\]

4.4.3 Air Gap

The image and attributes of an air gap element are as follows.

**Image:**

\[
M_1 \quad \rightarrow \quad \longrightarrow \quad \leftarrow \quad M_2
\]

The input parameters of the air gap can be defined in two ways. One is to define the air gap length and the cross section area, and the other is to define the inductance factor \( A_L \). They are as follows.

**Attributes:**

For the element *Air Gap*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air Gap Length</td>
<td>The length of the air gap, ( l_g ), in m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the element *Air Gap (AL)*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance Factor $A_L$</td>
<td>Inductance factor $A_L$, in H, defined as the inductance per turn squared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance for Losses</td>
<td>Resistance $R$, in ohm, that represents the losses due to the air gap fringing effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag of the current that flows through the resistor $R$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The resistance $R$ represents the losses due to the air gap fringing effect. Assuming that the mmf (magnetomotive force) applied across the air gap is $F$, the electric equivalent circuit of the air gap is as follows:

The mmf, in the form of a voltage source, applies across the capacitor (the capacitance has the value of the inductance factor $A_L$) and the resistor $R$. For the element *Air Gap*, the inductance factor can be calculated from the air gap length and the cross section area as:

$$A_L = \frac{\mu_o \cdot A_c}{l_g}$$

where $\mu_o = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}$.

The losses on the resistor represents the losses due to the fringing effect, which can be expressed as:

$$P_{loss} = I_{rms}^2 \cdot R$$

where $I_{rms}$ is the rms value of the current $i$ flowing through the resistor.

### 4.4.4 Linear Core

This element represents a linear loss less core.

**Image:**

![Image](image-url)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance Factor $A_L$</td>
<td>Inductance factor $A_L$ of the core, in H, defined as the inductance per turn squared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the length of the core is $L_{\text{length}}$ and the cross section area is $A_c$, the inductance factor $A_L$ is expressed as:

$$A_L = \frac{\mu_o \cdot \mu_r \cdot A_c}{L_{\text{length}}}$$
where $\mu_r$ is the relative permeability of the core material.

### 4.4.5 Saturable Core

This element models a magnetic core with saturation and hysteresis.

**Image:**

![Saturable Core Diagram]

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inductance Factor $A_L$</td>
<td>Inductance factor $A_L$ of the core, in H, defined as the inductance per turn squared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance for Losses</td>
<td>Resistance $R$, in Ohm, that represents the core losses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $\Phi_{sat}$</td>
<td>Coefficient $\Phi_{sat}$ for the core B-H curve, in Weber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $K_1$</td>
<td>Coefficient $K_1$ for the core B-H curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $K_{exp1}$</td>
<td>Coefficient $K_{exp1}$ for the core B-H curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $K_2$</td>
<td>Coefficient $K_2$ for the core B-H curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $K_{exp2}$</td>
<td>Coefficient $K_{exp2}$ for the core B-H curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Flux $\Phi_o$</td>
<td>Initial flux $\Phi_o$ of the core, in Weber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag of the electric current that flows through the resistor $R$. If the rms value of the current is $I_{rms}$, the core losses can be calculated as: $P_{core_loss} = I_{rms}^2 * R$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the element image, the nodes M1 and M2 are the two nodes that connect the core to other magnetic elements (such as winding, flux leakage path, air gap, etc.). The node marked with a dot is Node M2. Node C1 is a control output node, which shows the flux (in Weber) flowing through the core, from Node M2 to M1.

The initial flux of the core, $\Phi_o$, is the flux flowing from Node M2 to M1 at the beginning, corresponding to the field intensity $H = 0$. The initial flux density $B_o$ can be calculated as: $B_o = \Phi_o / A_c$ (where $A_c$ is the core cross section area), and the initial mmf $F_o$ is: $F_o = \Phi_o / A_L$.

A differential voltage probe connected between Node M2 to M1 will measure the mmf (in ampere*turn) applied to the core.

The coefficients $\Phi_{sat}$, $K_1$, $K_{exp1}$, $K_2$, and $K_{exp2}$ are used to fit the B-H curve of an actual magnetic material. A good initial guess of $\Phi_{sat}$ is the maximum flux of the B-H curve in deep saturation. To calculate this flux, multiply the corresponding flux density $B$ by the cross section area of the core. Coefficient $K_1$ usually varies between 0.7 and 1, depending on the core material. Coefficient $K_{exp1}$ mainly affects the rate of the core saturation, and is in the range between 10 and 200 (10 for low permeability ferrite, and 200 for metglas).

The coefficients $K_2$ and $K_{exp2}$ are used in very rare occasions, such as for ferroresonant regulators. They are normally set as follows to keep them from affecting the B-H curve:

- $K_2 > 2$
- $K_{exp2} > 20$

A tutorial on how to define the core coefficients is provided in the "doc" sub-folder in the PSIM directory. Also, a program is provided to plot the B-H curve of the core given a set of coefficients. To launch this program, in PSIM, go to **Utilities >> B-H Curve**.
4.5 Other Elements

4.5.1 Operational Amplifier

Two types of operational amplifier (op. amp.) models are provided: ideal op. amp. model, and non-ideal op. amp. model (Level-1 model).

Note that the ideal op. amp. model works in the negative feedback mode but does not work in the positive feedback mode. The non-ideal op. amp. model does not have such a restriction.

4.5.1.1 Ideal Operational Amplifier


**Images:**

![Op. Amp.](image1)

![Op. Amp. (ground)](image2)

![Op. Amp. (ground/inverted)](image3)


where

- \( V^+; V^- \) - noninverting and inverting input voltages
- \( V_o \) - output voltage
- \( A_o \) - op. amp. dc gain (\( A_o \) is set to 100,000.)
- \( R_o \) - output resistance (\( R_o \) is set to 80 Ohms)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage ( V_{s+} )</td>
<td>Upper voltage source level of the op. amp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage ( V_{s-} )</td>
<td>Lower voltage source levels of the op. amp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The difference between the element Op. Amp. and Op. Amp. (ground) or Op. Amp. (ground/inverted) is that, for the Op. Amp. element, the reference ground of the op. amp. model is connected to the power ground, whereas for Op. Amp. (ground) or Op. Amp. (ground/inverted), the reference ground node of the model is accessible and can be floating.

Note that the image of an op. amp. is similar to that of a comparator. For the op. amp., the inverting input is at the upper left and the noninverting input is at the lower left. For the comparator, it is the opposite.

**Example: A Boost Power Factor Correction Circuit**

The figure below shows a boost power factor correction circuit. The PI regulators of both the inner current loop and the outer voltage loop are implemented using op. amp.
4.5.1.2 Non-Ideal Operational Amplifier

As compared to the ideal op. amp. model, the non-ideal op. amp. model, also referred to as Level-1 op. amp. model, includes the following characteristics in the model:

- Op. amp. bandwidth
- Output current limit

The non-ideal op. amp. is modelled using power circuit elements, and similar to the ideal op. amp., is treated as a power element in PSIM.

Two non-ideal op. amp. elements are provided: Op. Amp. (level-1) and Op. Amp. (ground) (level-1). The difference between these two elements is that, for Op. Amp. (level-1), the reference ground of the op. amp. model is connected to the power ground, whereas for Op. Amp. (ground) (level-1), the reference ground node of the model is accessible and can be floating.

The non-ideal op. amp. images have the number "1" at the upper right corner, as shown below.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Input Resistance Rin</td>
<td>Input resistance of the op. amp., in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Gain $A_o$</td>
<td>DC gain of the op. amp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit Gain Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency at which the op. amp. gain is 1, in Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Resistance $R_o$</td>
<td>Output resistance of the op. amp., in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Output Current</td>
<td>Maximum current that the op. amp. output can provide, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage $V_s+$</td>
<td>Upper voltage source level of the op. amp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage $V_s-$</td>
<td>Lower voltage source levels of the op. amp.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The figure below shows the definition of the dc gain $A_o$ and the unit gain frequency.
4.5.2 TL431 Shunt Regulator

The image of the TL431 shunt regulator is shown as below.

Image:

The TL431 regulator maintains the reference node voltage to be around 2.495V. In this model, the limited bandwidth of the TL431 is modelled. That is, the ac frequency response of the TL431 model resembles the following figure from the datasheet.

4.5.3 Opto-Coupler

The image and parameters of an opto-coupler are shown below.

Image:
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current Transfer Ratio</td>
<td>The current transfer ratio $CTR$ between the transistor current $i_c$ and the diode current $i_d$, that is, $CTR = \frac{i_c}{i_d}$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Resistance</td>
<td>Diode resistance $R_d$, in Ohm. Note that the resistance must be greater than 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diode Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>The forward diode threshold voltage $V_{d,th}$, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transistor $V_{ce, sat}$</td>
<td>The transistor saturation voltage $V_{ce, sat}$, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transistor-side Capacitance</td>
<td>Capacitance $C_p$ across the collector and emitter of the transistor, in F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These parameters can either be read directly from the manufacturer datasheet, or can be calculated from the datasheet information. Take the Motorola optocoupler 4N25 as an example. From the datasheet, we can read the current transfer ratio and the transistor saturation voltage as:

$$CTR = 70\% = 0.7; \quad V_{ce, sat} = 0.15 \text{ V}$$

From the "LED Forward Voltage versus Forward Current” characteristics on the datasheet, one can calculate the diode resistance $R_d$ and the threshold voltage $V_{d,th}$. We assume that the diode forward voltage is approximated by a straight line. That is,

$$v_d = V_{d,th} + R_d \cdot i_d$$

With $T_A = 25^\circ$C, we can obtain two readings from the curve: $i_d = 10 \text{ mA}$ and $v_d = 1.15 \text{ V}$; $i_d = 40 \text{ mA}$ and $v_d = 1.3 \text{ V}$. Based on these two points, we can calculate $R_d$ and $V_{d,th}$ as: $R_d = 5 \text{ Ohm}$; $V_{d,th} = 1.1 \text{ V}$.

The optocoupler model does not take into account the delay, but it does model the turn-on/turn-off transient through the capacitor $C_p$ across the collector and emitter of the transistor. The capacitance value can be obtained from the fall time $t_{fall}$ and the switching time test condition as:

$$C_p = \frac{t_{fall}}{2.2 \cdot R_L}$$

where $R_L$ is the load resistor in the switching time test circuit. For 4N25, for example, from the datasheet, we can obtain: $t_{fall} = 1.3 \mu$s, and $R_L = 100 \text{ Ohm}$. The capacitance is calculated as: $C_p = 6 \text{ nF}$.

### 4.5.4 $dv/dt$ Block

A $dv/dt$ block has the same function as the differentiator in the control circuit, except that it is for the power circuit.

**Image:**

![dv/dt Block](image)

The output of the $dv/dt$ block is equal to the derivative of the input voltage versus time. It is calculated as:

$$V_o = \frac{V_{in}(t) - V_{in}(t-\Delta t)}{\Delta t}$$

where $V_{in}(t)$ and $V_{in}(t-\Delta t)$ are the input values at the current and previous time step, and $\Delta t$ is the simulation time step.
4.5.5 Relays

Two relay blocks with one normally open (NO) switch and one normally closed (NC) switch are provided.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relay (1 NO 1 NC)</th>
<th>Relay (1 NO 1 NC changeover)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rated Coil Voltage</td>
<td>Rated voltage of the relay coil, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coil Resistance</td>
<td>Resistance of the coil, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operate Voltage</td>
<td>Voltage at which the relay will operate, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release Voltage</td>
<td>Voltage at which the relay will return to the default position, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operate Time</td>
<td>Time from the moment the operate voltage is reached to the moment the switches operate, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release Time</td>
<td>Time from the moment the release voltage is reached to the moment the switches return to the default positions, in sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The relays have one normally open switch and one normally closed switch. When a dc voltage is applied to the relay coil in the polarity as shown in the image, if the voltage reaches the Operate Voltage, after a time delay defined by the Operate Time, the NO switch will be closed, and the NC switch will be opened.

When the coil voltage reduces to the Release Voltage, after a time delay defined by the Release Time, the two switches will return to their default positions.
4.6 Motor Drive Module

The Motor Drive Module is an add-on module to the basic PSIM program. It provides machine models and mechanical load models for motor drive system studies.

The Motor Drive Module includes electric machines as described in this section, and mechanical elements and speed/torque/position sensors as described in Section 4.9.

4.6.1 Reference Direction of Mechanical Systems

In a motor drive system, in order to formulate equations for the mechanical system, a position notation needs to be defined. Take the following motor drive system as an example:

![Diagram of two induction machines connected back-to-back](image)

The system consists of two induction machines, IM1 and IM2, connected back-to-back. One operates as a motor, and the other as a generator. From the point of view of the first machine IM1, the mechanical equation can be written as:

\[
(J_1 + J_2) \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em1} - T_{em2}
\]

where \(J_1\) and \(J_2\) are the moment of inertia, and \(T_{em1}\) and \(T_{em2}\) are the developed torques of the machine IM1 and IM2, respectively.

From the point of view of the second machine IM2, however, the mechanical equation can be written as:

\[
(J_1 + J_2) \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em2} - T_{em1}
\]

These two equations are equally valid, but will produce opposite mechanical speed.

In order to avoid this ambiguity, in PSIM, the concept "reference direction" is used in the mechanical system so that the mechanical equation can be uniquely defined.

In a mechanical system, one element is designated as the master unit (this element is considered to operate in the master mode), and the rest of the elements are in the slave mode. Elements that can be master units are: Electric machines, mechanical-to-electrical interface blocks, and gear boxes.

The master unit defines the reference direction of the mechanical system. The direction is define as the direction from the shaft node of the master unit, along the shaft, to the rest of the mechanical system.

Once the reference direction of the mechanical system is defined, the speed and torque reference of the mechanical system can be defined. For example, if we use the right-hand method, with the thumb pointing in the reference direction of the mechanical system, by rotating the right hand, the fingers will point to the positive direction of the speed and the torque.

Moreover, each mechanical element has its own reference direction. The following diagram shows the reference direction of each mechanical element, as indicated by the arrow:
The reference direction of each element and the reference direction of the overall mechanical system determine how the element interacts with the mechanical system.

For example, if the reference direction of a machine is along the same direction as the reference direction of the mechanical system, the developed torque of the machine will contribute to the shaft rotation in the positive direction. However, if the reference direction of the machine is opposite to that of the mechanical system, the developed torque will contribute to the shaft rotation in the negative direction.

In the two-machine example above, using the notation of the "reference direction", if we define the machine IM1 as the master unit, the reference direction of the overall mechanical system will be from left to right, as shown below. Based on this direction, the machine IM1 will be along the reference direction, and the machine IM2 will be opposite to the reference direction. This leads to the equivalent circuit of the mechanical system as shown on the right.

Similarly, if we define the machine IM2 as the master unit, the reference direction of the overall mechanical system will be from right to left, as shown below. Based on this direction, the machine IM1 will be opposite to the reference direction, and the machine IM2 will be along the reference direction. This leads to the equivalent circuit of the mechanical system as shown on the right.

The following shows another mechanical system with sensors and loads connected in different ways.
In this mechanical system, the machine on the left is the master unit. The reference direction of the mechanical system is from left to the right along the mechanical shaft. Comparing this direction with the reference direction of each element, Load 1, Speed Sensor 1, and Torque Sensor 1, will be along the reference direction, and Load 2, Speed Sensor 2, and Torque Sensor 2 will be opposite to the reference direction of the mechanical system. Therefore, if the speed of the machine is positive, Speed Sensor 1 reading will be positive, and Speed Sensor 2 reading will be negative.

Similarly, the two constant-torque mechanical loads, with the amplitudes of $T_{L1}$ and $T_{L2}$, interact with the machine in different ways. Load 1 is along the reference direction, and the loading torque of Load 1 to the master machine will be $T_{L1}$. On the other hand, Load 2 is opposite to the reference direction, and the loading torque of Load 2 to the machine will be $-T_{L2}$.

**4.6.2 Induction Machines**

Linear and nonlinear models are provided for squirrel-cage and wound-rotor induction machines. The linear model is further divided into general type and symmetrical type. This section describes the linear models.

Four linear models are provided:
- Symmetrical 3-phase squirrel-cage induction machine
- General 3-phase squirrel-cage induction machine
- Symmetrical 3-phase wound-rotor induction machine
- General 3-phase wound-rotor induction machine

The images and parameters are shown as follows.

**Images:**
**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding leakage inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_r$ (rotor)</td>
<td>Rotor winding resistance referred to the stator side, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_r$ (rotor)</td>
<td>Rotor winding leakage inductance referred to the stator side, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_m$ (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_s/N_r$ Turns Ratio</td>
<td>Stator and rotor winding turns ratio (for wound-rotor machine only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles $P$ of the machine (an even integer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia $J$ of the machine, in kg*m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal torque $T_{em}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the parameters are referred to the stator side.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The models of the squirrel-cage induction machine with and without the neutral are the same internally.

The operation of a 3-phase induction machine is described by the following equations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_{abc,s} \\
    v_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} R_s & \frac{L_s}{2} & 0 \\
 0 & R_s & \frac{L_s}{2} \\
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    i_{abc,s} \\
    i_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
    \frac{M_{sr}^2}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} \\
    \frac{M_{sr}}{2} & \frac{L_s^2}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} \\
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    \frac{d}{dt} i_{abc,s} \\
    \frac{d}{dt} i_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} \\
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_{abc,s} \\
    v_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} R_r & 0 & 0 \\
0 & R_r & 0 \\
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    i_{abc,s} \\
    i_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
    \frac{M_{sr}^2}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} \\
    \frac{M_{sr}}{2} & \frac{L_r^2}{2} & \frac{M_{sr}}{2} \\
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    \frac{d}{dt} i_{abc,s} \\
    \frac{d}{dt} i_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} \\
\end{align*}
\]

where

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_{abc,s} \\
    v_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix}
    v_{a,s} \\
    v_{b,s} \\
    v_{c,s}
\end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix}
    v_{a,r} \\
    v_{b,r} \\
    v_{c,r}
\end{bmatrix} \\
\begin{bmatrix}
    i_{abc,s} \\
    i_{abc,r}
\end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix}
    i_{a,s} \\
    i_{b,s} \\
    i_{c,s}
\end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix}
    i_{a,r} \\
    i_{b,r} \\
    i_{c,r}
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]

For squirrel-cage machines, $v_{a,r} = v_{b,r} = v_{c,r} = 0$. The parameter matrices are defined as:

\[
\begin{align*}
R_s &= \begin{bmatrix}
    R_s & 0 & 0 \\
    0 & R_s & 0 \\
    0 & 0 & R_s
\end{bmatrix} \\
R_r &= \begin{bmatrix}
    R_r & 0 & 0 \\
    0 & R_r & 0 \\
    0 & 0 & R_r
\end{bmatrix} \\
L_s &= \begin{bmatrix}
    L_s + M_{sr}^2 & -M_{sr} & -M_{sr} \\
    -M_{sr} & \frac{L_s}{2} + M_{sr}^2 & -M_{sr} \\
    -M_{sr} & -M_{sr} & \frac{L_s}{2} + M_{sr}^2
\end{bmatrix} \\
L_r &= \begin{bmatrix}
    L_r + M_{sr} & -M_{sr}^2 & -M_{sr} \\
    -M_{sr}^2 & \frac{L_r}{2} + M_{sr}^2 & -M_{sr} \\
    -M_{sr} & -M_{sr} & \frac{L_r}{2} + M_{sr}^2
\end{bmatrix}
\end{align*}
\]
where $M_{sr}$ is the mutual inductance between the stator and rotor windings, and $\theta$ is the mechanical angle. The mutual inductance is related to the magnetizing inductance as:

$$L_m = \frac{3}{2} M_{sr}$$

The mechanical equation is expressed as:

$$J \cdot \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - T_L$$

where the developed torque $T_{em}$ is defined as:

$$T_{em} = \frac{P}{2} \cdot [i_{abc,r}]^T \cdot \frac{d}{d\theta} [M_{sr}] \cdot [i_{abc,r}]$$

For a symmetrical squirrel-cage induction machine, the steady state equivalent circuit is shown below. In the figure, $s$ is the slip.

### 4.6.3 Induction Machine with Saturation

Two models of induction machines with saturation are provided:
- 3-phase squirrel-cage induction machine
- 3-phase wound-rotor induction machine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Images:</th>
<th>Squirrel-cage (nonlinear)</th>
<th>Wound-rotor (nonlinear)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding leakage inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 4: Power Circuit Components

All the parameters are referred to the stator side.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The operation of a 3-phase induction machine with saturation is described by the following equations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{v}_{abc,s} &= \left[ R_s \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,s} + L_s \cdot \frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{i}_{abc,s} + \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{\lambda}_{abc,s} \right] \\
\mathbf{v}_{abc,r} &= \left[ R_r \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,r} + L_r \cdot \frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{i}_{abc,r} + \frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{\lambda}_{abc,r} \right]
\end{align*}
\]

where

\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{\lambda}_{abc,s} &= M_{sr} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,s} + M_{sr} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\ \cos \theta & \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\ \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,r} \\
\mathbf{\lambda}_{abc,r} &= M_{sr} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\ \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos \theta & \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\ \cos(\theta - \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta + \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,s} + M_{sr} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathbf{i}_{abc,r}
\end{align*}
\]

In this case, the inductance $M_{sr}$ is no longer constant, but a function of the magnetizing current $I_m$. The magnetizing current $I_m$ and inductance $L_m$ are defined by a series of data points in pair, for example, "(0, 0.041) (5, 0.035) (20, 0.03)". Between two data points, the inductance $L_m$ is interpolated linearly. When the magnetizing current is less than the minimum or greater than the maximum, the inductance will be clamped to the value at the first point or the last point.
4.6.4 DC Machine

The image and parameters of a dc machine are as follows:

**Image:**

![Diagram of a dc machine](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_a$ (armature)</td>
<td>Armature winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_a$ (armature)</td>
<td>Armature winding inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_f$ (field)</td>
<td>Field winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_f$ (field)</td>
<td>Field winding inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the machine, in kg*m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_t$ (rated)</td>
<td>Rated armature terminal voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$I_a$ (rated)</td>
<td>Rated armature current, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$n$ (rated)</td>
<td>Rated mechanical speed, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$I_f$ (rated)</td>
<td>Rated field current, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal torque $T_{em}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>The master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the torque flag is set to 1, the internal torque generated by the machine will be saved to the output file for display.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The operation of a dc machine is described by the following equations:

$$v_t = E_a + i_a \cdot R_a + L_a \frac{di_a}{dt}$$

$$v_f = i_f \cdot R_f + L_f \frac{di_f}{dt}$$

$$E_a = k \cdot \phi \cdot \omega_m$$

$$T_{em} = k \cdot \phi \cdot i_a$$

$$J \cdot \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - T_L$$

where $v_t$, $v_f$, $i_a$, and $i_f$ are the armature and field winding voltage and current, respectively; $E_a$ is the back emf,
\( \omega_m \) is the mechanical speed in rad./sec., \( T_{em} \) is the internal developed torque, and \( T_L \) is the load torque. The back emf and the internal torque can also be expressed as:

\[
E_a = L_{af} \cdot i_f \cdot \omega_m
\]

\[
T_{em} = L_{af} \cdot i_f \cdot i_a
\]

where \( L_{af} \) is the mutual inductance between the armature and the field windings. It can be calculated based on the rated operating conditions as:

\[
L_{af} = \frac{(V_t - I_a \cdot R_a)}{I_f \cdot \omega_m}
\]

Note that the dc machine model assumes magnetic linearity. Saturation is not considered.

**Example: A DC Motor with a Constant-Torque Load**

The circuit below shows a shunt-excited dc motor with a constant-torque load \( T_L \). Since the load is along the reference direction of the mechanical system, the loading torque to the machine is \( T_L \). Also, the speed sensor is along the reference direction. It will give a positive output for a positive speed.

The simulation waveforms of the armature current and the speed are shown on the right.

### 4.6.5 Brushless DC Machine

A 3-phase brushless dc machine is a type of permanent magnet synchronous machine with trapezoidal waveform back emf. It has 3-phase windings on the stator, and permanent magnet on the rotor.

The image of the 3-phase brushless dc machine is shown below. Two types of parameter inputs are provided: One based on machine model parameters, and the other based on manufacturer datasheet information.

**Image:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes based on machine model parameters:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameters</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R ) (stator resistance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L ) (stator self ind.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes based on manufacturer datasheet information:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameters</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance (phase-phase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance (phase-phase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles $P$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Load Speed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The node assignments of the image are: Nodes a, b, and c are the stator winding terminals for Phase $A$, $B$, and $C$, respectively. The stator windings are Y connected, and Node n is the neutral point. The shaft node is the connecting terminal for the mechanical shaft. They are all power nodes and should be connected to the power circuit.

Node $s_a$, $s_b$, and $s_c$ are the outputs of the built-in 6-pulse hall effect position sensors for Phase $A$, $B$, and $C$, respectively. The sensor output is a bipolar commutation pulse (1, 0, and -1). The sensor output nodes are all control nodes and should be connected to the control circuit.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The equations of the 3-phase brushless dc machine are:

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{dt}v_a &= R \cdot i_a + (L - M) \cdot \frac{di_a}{dt} + E_a \\
\frac{d}{dt}v_b &= R \cdot i_b + (L - M) \cdot \frac{di_b}{dt} + E_b \\
\frac{d}{dt}v_c &= R \cdot i_c + (L - M) \cdot \frac{di_c}{dt} + E_c 
\end{align*}
\]

where $v_a$, $v_b$, and $v_c$ are the phase voltages, $i_a$, $i_b$, and $i_c$ are the phase currents, $R$, $L$, and $M$ are the stator phase resistance, self inductance, and mutual inductance, and $E_a$, $E_b$, and $E_c$ are the back emf of Phase $A$, $B$, and $C$, respectively.

The back emf voltages are a function of the rotor mechanical speed $\omega_m$ and the rotor electrical angle $\theta_r$, that is:

\[
\begin{align*}
E_a &= k_{e,a} \cdot \omega_m \\
E_b &= k_{e,b} \cdot \omega_m \\
E_c &= k_{e,c} \cdot \omega_m 
\end{align*}
\]

The coefficients $k_{e,a}$, $k_{e,b}$, and $k_{e,c}$ are dependent on the rotor angle $\theta_r$. In this model, an ideal trapezoidal waveform profile is assumed, as shown below for Phase $A$. Also shown is the Phase $A$ hall effect sensor signal $S_a$.

\[
\begin{align*}
k_{e,a} \\
K_{pk} \\
\alpha \\
-\frac{1}{3} \\
\frac{1}{3} \\
360^\circ \\
360^\circ \\
\theta_r \\
\end{align*}
\]

where $K_{pk}$ is the peak trapezoidal value, in V/(rad./sec.), which is defined as: $K_{pk} = \frac{V_{pk}}{krpm} \cdot \frac{1}{1000 \cdot \frac{2\pi}{60}}$.

Given the values of $V_{pk}/krpm$ and $V_{rms}/krpm$, the angle $\alpha$ is determined automatically in the program.

The developed torque of the machine is:

\[
T_{em} = \left( E_a \cdot i_a + E_b \cdot i_b + E_c \cdot i_c \right) / \omega_m
\]

The mechanical equations are:
where $B$ is the friction coefficient, $T_{load}$ is the load torque, and $P$ is the number of poles. The coefficient $B$ is calculated from the moment of inertia $J$ and the shaft time constant $\tau_{shaft}$ as below:

$$B = \frac{J}{\tau_{shaft}}$$

The shaft time constant $\tau_{shaft}$, therefore, reflects the effect of the friction and windage of the machine. Note that when the shaft time constant is set to 0, the friction term is $B \cdot \omega_m$ is ignored.

To better understand the definition of the shaft time constant, we can represent the mechanical equation with the following equivalent circuit:

This circuit shows that the shaft time constant $\tau_{shaft}$ is equal to the RC time constant of the resistor $1/B$ and the capacitor $J$. Therefore, the shaft time constant can be measured by the following test:

- Connect the machine to an external mechanical source. With the stator side in open circuit, drive the machine to a certain speed.
- Remove the mechanical source. The shaft time constant will be equal to the time that it takes the machine to decelerate to 36.8% of its initial speed.

More Explanation on the Hall Effect Sensor:

A hall effect position sensor consists of a set of hall switches and a set of trigger magnets.

The hall switch is a semiconductor switch (e.g. MOSFET or BJT) that opens or closes when the magnetic field is higher or lower than a certain threshold value. It is based on the hall effect, which generates an emf proportional to the flux-density when the switch is carrying a current supplied by an external source. It is common to detect the emf using a signal conditioning circuit integrated with the hall switch or mounted very closely to it. This provides a TTL-compatible pulse with sharp edges and high noise immunity for connection to the controller via a screened cable. For a three-phase brushless dc motor, three hall switches are spaced 120 electrical deg. apart and are mounted on the stator frame.

The set of trigger magnets can be a separate set of magnets, or it can use the rotor magnets of the brushless motor. If the trigger magnets are separate, they should have the matched pole spacing (with respect to the rotor magnets), and should be mounted on the shaft in close proximity to the hall switches. If the trigger magnets use the rotor magnets of the machine, the hall switches must be mounted close enough to the rotor magnets, where they can be energized by the leakage flux at the appropriate rotor positions.

Example: Defining Brushless DC Motor Parameters from Manufacturer Datasheet

This example illustrates how to define brushless dc motor parameters from manufacturer datasheet. Below is the information provided on the datasheet of the brushless dc motor Maxon EC-22-16730 (32V, 50W) from Maxon Motor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Values at nominal voltage</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominal voltage (V)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No load speed (rpm)</td>
<td>38700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No load current (mA)</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Characteristics
Terminal resistance phase to phase (Ohm) 0.363
Inductance phase to phase (mH) 0.049
Torque constant (mNm/A) 7.85
Speed constant (rpm/V) 1220
Inertia (gcm²) 4.2

Other specifications:
Number of pole pairs 1
Number of phases 3

Using the element based on manufacturer datasheet information, and after converting all the quantities to the SI units, the motor parameters in PSIM are defined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance (phase-phase)</td>
<td>0.363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance (phase-phase)</td>
<td>0.049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Constant</td>
<td>1220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Constant</td>
<td>7.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles P</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>4.2e-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Load Speed</td>
<td>38700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Load Current</td>
<td>327m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Start-Up of an Open-Loop Brushless DC Motor
The figure below shows an open-loop brushless dc motor drive system. The motor is fed by a 3-phase voltage source inverter. The outputs of the motor hall effect position sensors are used as the gating signals for the inverter, resulting a 6-pulse operation.

The simulation waveforms show the start-up transient of the mechanical speed (in rpm), developed torque \( T_{em} \), and 3-phase input currents.
4.6.6 Synchronous Machine with External Excitation

The structure of a conventional synchronous machine consists of three stator windings, one field winding on either a salient or cylindrical rotor, and an optional damping winding on the rotor.

Depending on the way the internal model interfaces with the external stator circuitry, there are two types of interface: one is the voltage-type interface, and the other is the current-type interface. The model for the voltage-type interface consists of controlled voltage sources on the stator side, and this model is suitable in situations where the machine operates as a generator and/or the stator external circuit is in series with inductive branches. On the other hand, The model for the current-type interface consists of controlled current sources on the stator side, and this model is suitable in situations where the machine operates as a motor and/or the stator external circuit is in parallel with capacitive branches.

The image and parameters of the machine are shown as follows.

**Image:**

![Image of synchronous machine with external excitation](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator leakage inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{dm}$ (d-axis mag. ind.)</td>
<td>d-axis magnetizing inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{qm}$ (q-axis mag. ind.)</td>
<td>q-axis magnetizing inductance, in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_f$ (field)</td>
<td>Field winding resistance referred to the stator side, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{fl}$ (field leakage ind.)</td>
<td>Field winding leakage inductance referred to the stator side, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{dr}$ (damping cage)</td>
<td>Rotor damping cage d-axis resistance referred to the stator side, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{drl}$ (damping cage)</td>
<td>Rotor damping cage d-axis leakage inductance referred to the stator side, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{qr}$ (damping cage)</td>
<td>Rotor damping cage q-axis resistance referred to the stator side, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{qrl}$ (damping cage)</td>
<td>Rotor damping cage q-axis leakage inductance referred to the stator side, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$N_s/N_f$ (effective)</td>
<td>Stator-field winding effective turns ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles $P$</td>
<td>Number of Poles $P$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia $J$ of the machine, in kg*m$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal developed torque $T_{em}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the parameters are referred to the stator side.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.
The equations of the synchronous machine can be expressed as follows:

\[
\hat{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{R} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{i}} + \frac{d}{dt}[\mathbf{l}]
\]

where

\[
\hat{\mathbf{v}} = \begin{bmatrix} v_a \\ v_b \\ v_c \\ v_y \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}^T \quad \hat{\mathbf{i}} = \begin{bmatrix} i_a \\ i_b \\ i_c \\ i_f \\ i_{dr} \\ i_{qdr} \end{bmatrix}^T
\]

\[
[\mathbf{R}] = \text{diag}[R_s, R_s, R_s, R_f, R_{dr}, R_{qdr}] \quad \mathbf{l} = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_a \\ \lambda_b \\ \lambda_c \\ \lambda_f \\ \lambda_{dr} \\ \lambda_{qdr} \end{bmatrix}^T
\]

and \([\lambda] = [L]^*[\mathbf{l}]\). The inductance matrix is defined as follows:

\[
[L] = \begin{bmatrix} L_{11} & L_{12} \\ L_{12}^T & L_{22} \end{bmatrix}
\]

and

\[
[L_{11}] = \begin{bmatrix}
L_s + L_o + L_2 \cos(2\theta_r) & -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\
-\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & L_s + L_o + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos(2\theta_r) \\
-\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cos(2\theta_r) & L_s + L_o + L_2 \cos\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
[L_{12}] = \begin{bmatrix}
L_{sf}\cos(2\theta_r) - L_{sa}\cos(2\theta_r) - L_{sq}\sin(2\theta_r) \\
L_{sf}\cos\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) - L_{sa}\cos\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) - L_{sq}\sin\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\
L_{sf}\cos\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) - L_{sa}\cos\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) - L_{sq}\sin\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
[L_{22}] = \begin{bmatrix}
L_f & L_{fdr} & 0 \\
L_{fdr} & L_{dr} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & L_{qdr}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

where \(\theta_r\) is the rotor angle.

The developed torque can be expressed as:

\[
T = \frac{P}{2} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \frac{d}{d\theta_r} [L] \cdot \hat{\mathbf{i}}
\]

The mechanical equations are:

\[
J \cdot \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - T_{load}
\]

\[
\frac{d\theta_r}{dt} = \frac{P}{2} \cdot \omega_m
\]

The input parameters and the parameters in the equations are related in the following way:

\[
L_{dm} = 1.5 \cdot (L_o + L_2)
\]

\[
L_{qm} = 1.5 \cdot (L_o - L_2)
\]

\[
L_{sf} = \left(\frac{N_s}{N_f}\right)^2 \cdot L_{dm}
\]
### 4.6.7 Permanent Magnet Synchronous Machine

A 3-phase permanent magnet synchronous machine has 3-phase windings on the stator, and permanent magnet on the rotor. The difference between this machine and the brushless dc machine is that the machine back emf is sinusoidal.

The image and parameters of the machine are shown as follows.

**Image:**

![Image of a permanent magnet synchronous machine (PMSM)]

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( R_s ) (stator resistance)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_d ) (d-axis ind.)</td>
<td>Stator d-axis inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( L_q ) (q-axis ind.)</td>
<td>Stator q-axis inductance, in H.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V_{pk} / \text{krpm} )</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant, in V/krpm (mechanical speed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles ( P )</td>
<td>Number of poles ( P )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia ( J ) of the machine, in kg*m^2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft Time Constant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant ( \tau_{\text{shaft}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Rotor Angle</td>
<td>Initial rotor electrical angle, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal developed torque ( T_{\text{em}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The node assignments of the image are: Nodes \( a, b, \) and \( c \) are the stator winding terminals for Phase \( a, b, \) and \( c \), respectively. The stator windings are \( Y \) connected, and Node \( n \) is the neutral point. The shaft node is the **Shaft Node**.

\[
\begin{align*}
L_{sd} &= L_{dm} \\
L_{sq} &= L_{qm} \\
L_{fl} &= L_{f} - L_{sf} \\
L_{fd} &= L_{dm} \\
L_{drl} &= L_{dr} - L_{dm} \\
L_{qrl} &= L_{qr} - L_{qm}
\end{align*}
\]
connecting terminal for the mechanical shaft. They are all power nodes and should be connected to the power circuit.

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The equations of the permanent-magnet synchronous machine are:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
  R_s & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & R_s & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & R_d
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  i_a \\
i_b \\
i_c
\end{bmatrix} + \frac{d}{dt}\begin{bmatrix}
  \lambda_a \\
\lambda_b \\
\lambda_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]

where \( v_a, v_b, v_c \) and \( i_a, i_b, i_c \) and \( \lambda_a, \lambda_b, \lambda_c \) are the stator phase voltages, currents, and flux linkages, respectively, and \( R_s \) is the stator phase resistance. The flux linkages are further defined as:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  \lambda_a \\
\lambda_b \\
\lambda_c
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
  L_{aa} & L_{ab} & L_{ac} \\
  L_{ba} & L_{bb} & L_{bc} \\
  L_{ca} & L_{cb} & L_{cc}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  i_a \\
i_b \\
i_c
\end{bmatrix} + \lambda_{pm}
\begin{bmatrix}
  \cos(\theta_r) \\
\cos(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\
\cos(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3})
\end{bmatrix}
\]

where \( \theta_r \) is the rotor electrical angle, and \( \lambda_{pm} \) is the peak stator phase flux linkage defined as:

\[
\lambda_{pm} = \frac{60 \cdot V_{pk}/krpm}{\sqrt{3} \cdot \pi \cdot P \cdot 1000}
\]

where \( P \) is the number of poles.

The stator self and mutual inductances are rotor position dependent, and are defined as:

\[
L_{aa} = L_s + L_o + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r)
\]

\[
L_{bb} = L_s + L_o + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3})
\]

\[
L_{cc} = L_s + L_o + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3})
\]

\[
L_{ab} = -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3})
\]

\[
L_{ac} = -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3})
\]

\[
L_{bc} = -\frac{L_o}{2} + L_2 \cdot \cos(2\theta_r)
\]

where \( L_s \) is the stator leakage inductance. The variables in the abc frame can be converted to the dq0 frame using the following transformation:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  x_a \\
x_q \\
x_0
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \begin{bmatrix}
  \cos(\theta_r) & \cos(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}) & \cos(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\
  -\sin(\theta_r) & -\sin(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}) & -\sin(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}) \\
  \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2}
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  x_a \\
x_b \\
x_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The inverse transformation is as follows:
The d-axis and q-axis inductances are associated with the inductances in the abc frame as follows:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    x_d \\
    x_h \\
    x_q
\end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
    \cos(\theta_r) & -\sin(\theta_r) & 1 \\
    \cos\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\sin\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & 1 \\
    \cos\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\sin\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & 1
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
    x_d \\
    x_h \\
    x_q
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The developed torque can be expressed as:

\[
T_{em} = -\frac{P}{2} \cdot L_2 \cdot \begin{bmatrix}
    i_a \\
    i_b \\
    i_c
\end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix}
    \sin(2\theta_r) & \sin\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \sin\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\
    \sin\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \sin\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \sin(2\theta_r) \\
    \sin\left(2\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \sin(2\theta_r) & \sin\left(2\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    i_a \\
    i_b \\
    i_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    i_a \\
    i_b \\
    i_c
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{\lambda_{pm} \cdot \begin{bmatrix}
    i_a \\
    i_b \\
    i_c
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
    \sin(\theta_r) \\
    \sin\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\
    \sin\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)
\end{bmatrix}}{\frac{P}{2} \cdot \lambda_{pm}}
\]

In the dq0 frame, the developed torque can be expressed as:

\[
T_{em} = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{P}{2} \cdot \left(\lambda_{pm}i_d + (L_d - L_q)i_q\right)
\]

The mechanical equations are:

\[
J \cdot \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - B \cdot \omega_m - T_{load}
\]

\[
\frac{d\theta_r}{dt} = \frac{P}{2} \cdot \omega_m
\]

where B is a coefficient, \(T_{load}\) is the load torque, and P is the number of poles. The coefficient B is calculated from the moment of inertia J and the shaft time constant \(\tau_{shaft}\) as below:

\[
B = \frac{J}{\tau_{shaft}}
\]
4.6.8 Permanent Magnet Synchronous Machine with Saturation

A 3-phase PMSM machine with saturation differs from that of a linear 3-phase PMSM machine in that the d-axis and q-axis magnetizing inductances $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ can be expressed as a nonlinear function of the d-axis and q-axis currents in the lookup table form.

The image and parameters of the machine are shown as follows.

Image:

![PM Motor Diagram]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator resistance)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_s$ (stator leakage ind.)</td>
<td>Stator d-axis inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpk / krpm</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant, in V/krpm (mechanical speed). This value should be available from the machine data sheet. If not, it can be obtained through experiment by operating the machine as a generator at 1000 rpm and measuring the peak line-to-line voltage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles $P$</td>
<td>Number of poles $P$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia $J$ of the machine, in kg*m$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft Time Constant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant $\tau_{\text{shaft}}$, in sec. It is associated with the friction coefficient $B$ as: $B = J / \tau_{\text{shaft}}$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Rotor Angle</td>
<td>Initial rotor electrical angle, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_d$ Lookup Table File</td>
<td>File name of the lookup table for $L_{dm}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_q$ Lookup Table File</td>
<td>File name of the lookup table for $L_{qm}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$dq$ Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the lookup table. When the flag is 0, $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ are function of $I_d$ and $I_q$. When the flag is 1, $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ are function of the current magnitude $I_m$ and the angle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the transformation convention (see details below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal developed torque $T_{em}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The relationship between the d-axis and q-axis inductances $L_d$ and $L_q$ and the magnetizing inductances $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ is as follows:

$$L_d = L_s + L_{dm}$$

$$L_q = L_s + L_{qm}$$

where $L_s$ is the stator leakage inductance. Since $L_s$ is normally very small, $L_d$ can be considered equivalent to
$L_{dm}$ and $L_q$ can be considered equivalent to $L_{qm}$.

The *Transformation Flag* defines the transformation convention between the abc frame and the dq frame. When the *Transformation Flag* is 0:

$$\begin{bmatrix} I_d \\ I_q \end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{3} \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta_r) & \cos\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \cos\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\ -\sin(\theta_r) & -\sin\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\sin\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_a \\ i_b \\ i_c \end{bmatrix}$$

$$I_m = \sqrt{I_d^2 + I_q^2}$$

$$\theta_m = \text{atan} 2(I_q, I_d)$$

The current vector angle is in deg., and is from -180° to 180°.

When the *Transformation Flag* is 1:

$$\begin{bmatrix} I_d \\ I_q \end{bmatrix} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta_r) & \cos\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & \cos\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \\ -\sin(\theta_r) & -\sin\left(\theta_r - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) & -\sin\left(\theta_r + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_a \\ i_b \\ i_c \end{bmatrix}$$

$$I_m = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} \cdot \sqrt{I_d^2 + I_q^2}$$

$$\theta_m = \text{atan} 2(-I_d, I_q)$$

The current vector angle is in deg., and is from 0° to 360°.

The $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ lookup tables have the following format:

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
V_{r1}, V_{r2}, ..., V_{rM} \\
V_{c1}, V_{c2}, ..., V_{cN} \\
L_{11}, L_{12}, ..., L_{1N} \\
L_{21}, L_{22}, ..., L_{2N} \\
... ... ... \\
L_{M1}, L_{M2}, ..., L_{MN}
\end{array}\]

where $M$ is the number of rows and $N$ is the number of columns; $V_r$ is the row vector and $V_c$ is the column vector; and $L_{ij}$ is the $L_{dm}$ or $L_{qm}$ inductance value, in H, at Row $i$ and Column $j$. Note that Vectors $V_r$ and $V_c$ must be monotonically increasing.

When the *dq flag* is 0, the row vector is $I_q$ and the column vector is $I_d$. When the flag is 1, the row vector is the angle and the column vector is the amplitude $I_m$.

If the input is between two points, interpolation is used to calculate the value. If the input is less than the minimum or greater than the maximum value, the input will be set to the minimum or maximum value.

This PMSM model with saturation can also be used as the linear PMSM model if the lookup tables are defined such that $L_{dm}$ and $L_{qm}$ are linear function of $I_d$ and $I_q$.

The following shows an example of the lookup table:

\[\begin{array}{cccccccc}
4.15 \\
-5.7155 & -4.8990 & -4.0825 & -3.2660 \\
\end{array}\]
4.6.9 Switched Reluctance Machine

Three types of switched reluctance machine models are provided: 3-phase, 4-phase, and 5-phase.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resistance</td>
<td>Stator phase resistance $R$, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance $L_{min}$</td>
<td>Minimum phase inductance $L_{min}$, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inductance $L_{max}$</td>
<td>Maximum phase inductance $L_{max}$, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theta_min (deg.)</td>
<td>Duration of the interval $\theta_{min}$ where the inductance is at the minimum, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theta_max (deg.)</td>
<td>Duration of the interval $\theta_{max}$ where the inductance is at the maximum, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stator Pole Number</td>
<td>Number of stator poles (teeth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotor Pole Number</td>
<td>Number of rotor poles (teeth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia $J$ of the machine, in kg*m$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Output flag for internal torque $T_{em}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For more details on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

The node assignments are: Nodes a+, a-, b+, b-, c+, c-, etc. are the stator winding terminals for Phase $a$, $b$, $c$, $d$, and $e$, respectively. The shaft node is the connecting terminal for the mechanical shaft. They are all power nodes and should be connected to the power circuit.

The equation of the switched reluctance machine for one phase is:
where \(v\) is the phase voltage, \(i\) is the phase current, \(R\) is the phase resistance, and \(L\) is the phase inductance. The phase inductance \(L\) is a function of the rotor angle \(\theta\) (in electrical deg.), as shown in the following figure. The inductance profile is half-wave symmetrical. That is, it repeats itself after 180°.

The rotor angle is defined such that, when the stator and the rotor teeth are completely aligned, \(\theta = 0\). The value of the inductance can be in either rising stage, flat-top stage, falling stage, or flat-bottom stage.

If we define the constant \(k\) as the rising slope of the inductance from \(L_{\text{min}}\) to \(L_{\text{max}}\) (which is the same as the falling slope from \(L_{\text{max}}\) to \(L_{\text{min}}\)), and the interval of the rising/falling slope is \(\theta_{rf}\), we can express the inductance \(L\) as a function of the rotor angle \(\theta\) (from 0 to 180°) as follows:

\[
L = L_{\text{max}} \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq \theta \leq \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2}
\]

\[
L = L_{\text{max}} - k \cdot \left(\theta - \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2}\right) \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + \theta_{rf}
\]

\[
L = L_{\text{min}} \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + \theta_{rf} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + \theta_{rf} + \theta_{\text{min}}
\]

\[
L = L_{\text{min}} + k \cdot \left(\theta - \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} - \theta_{rf} - \theta_{min}\right) \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + \theta_{rf} + \theta_{min} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + 2\theta_{rf} + \theta_{\text{min}}
\]

\[
L = L_{\text{max}} \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\theta_{\text{max}}}{2} + 2\theta_{rf} + \theta_{\text{min}} \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ
\]

The developed torque of the machine per phase is:

\[
T_{\text{em}} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot i^2 \cdot \frac{dL}{d\theta}
\]

Based on the inductance expression, we have the developed torque in each stage as:

\[
T_{\text{em}} = \frac{i^2 \cdot k}{2} \quad \text{[rising stage]}
\]

\[
T_{\text{em}} = 0 \quad \text{[flat-top stage]}
\]

\[
T_{\text{em}} = -\frac{i^2 \cdot k}{2} \quad \text{[falling stage]}
\]

\[
T_{\text{em}} = 0 \quad \text{[flat-bottom stage]}
\]
4.6.10 Nonlinear Switched Reluctance Machine

In the previous switched reluctance models, the inductance is only a function of the rotor position, and it remains constant during the flat-top and flat-bottom states. In the nonlinear models, the inductance can be a nonlinear function of not only the rotor position, but also the current. The relationship between the inductance and the rotor position and current is defined through a 2-dimensional lookup table.

The images and parameters are shown as follows.

**Images:**

The inductance table file has the following format:

\[
m, n \\
\theta_1, \theta_2, \ldots, \theta_m \\
I_1, I_2, \ldots, I_n \\
L_{1,1}, L_{1,2}, \ldots, L_{1,n} \\
L_{2,1}, L_{2,2}, \ldots, L_{2,n} \\
\vdots \hspace{1cm} \vdots \\
L_{m,1}, L_{m,2}, \ldots, L_{m,n}
\]

where \(m\) is the number of rows and \(n\) is the number of columns; \(\theta_1\) to \(\theta_m\) is the row vector for the rotor position (in deg.), and \(I_1\) and \(I_n\) is the column vector for the phase current (in A); and \(L_{i,j}\) is the inductance value (in H) at Row \(i\) and Column \(j\). For example, when the rotor position is \(\theta_2\) and the phase current is \(I_1\), the inductance is \(L_{2,1}\).

Because of the half-wave symmetry, only inductance values from 0 to 180° need to be provided. Note that the row vector and column vector must be monotonically increasing.

The equation of a nonlinear switched reluctance machine for one phase is:
\[ v = i \cdot R + \frac{d(L \cdot i)}{dt} \]

where \( v \) is the phase voltage, \( i \) is the phase current, \( R \) is the phase resistance, and \( L \) is the phase inductance which depends on both the rotor angle and the current as defined by the lookup table.

The developed torque per phase is:

\[ T_{cm} = \frac{dW_{co}}{d\theta} \]

where \( W_{co} \) is the co-energy defined as:

\[ W_{co} = \int_0^{\theta} (L \cdot i) \cdot di \]

The integration and derivative calculations are done using the inductance lookup table.

### 4.6.11 Motor Control Blocks

The following control blocks for different machine types are provided:
- Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere Control
- Field Weakening Control

#### 4.6.11.1 Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere Control

There are two Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere (MTPA) control blocks in PSIM’s Motor Drive Module. Their images are shown below. On the left side is the MTPA for linear internal permanent magnet synchronous machine (linear IPM), and on the right side is for nonlinear IPM

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MTPA (IPM)</th>
<th>MTPA (NL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is:</td>
<td>Is:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id:</td>
<td>Id:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iq:</td>
<td>Iq:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ld:</td>
<td>Ld:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lq:</td>
<td>Lq:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \lambda ):</td>
<td>( \lambda ):</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Attributes of MTPA for Linear IPM:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ld (d-axis inductance)</td>
<td>d-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lq (q-axis inductance)</td>
<td>q-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpk / krpm</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant of the machine, in V/krpm (mechanical speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Current</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output current amplitude (peak), in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>System base voltage value, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>System base current value, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Mechanical Speed</td>
<td>System base mechanical speed, in rad/sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere control block has the following inputs and outputs, all in per-unit values:
- Is: Inverter current amplitude reference, input.
- Id: d-axis current reference, output.
Iq: q-axis current reference, output

This block is for the control of linear PMSM machines only. Given the current amplitude reference, this block will calculate the d-axis and q-axis current references $I_d$ and $I_q$ such that the maximum amount of torque is generated by the machine.

The block requires the parameters of the PMSM controlled and the inverter current rating.

**Attributes MPTA for Nonlinear IPM:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Current</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output current amplitude (peak), in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>System base current value, in A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This block is for the control of nonlinear internal permanent magnet synchronous machines (IPM) only. It has the following inputs and outputs, all in per unit value except the inductances $L_d$ and $L_q$ and the flux linkage $\Lambda$. If the base value $I_b$ is set to 1, all input and output quantities are in real values.

**Input Signals:**
- $I_s$: Inverter current amplitude reference
- $L_d$: d-axis inductance $L_d$, in H
- $L_q$: q-axis inductance $L_q$, in H
- $\Lambda$: Peak stator phase flux linkage, in Weber

**Output Signals:**
- $I_d$: d-axis current reference
- $I_q$: q-axis current reference

Given the current amplitude reference, this block will calculate the d-axis and q-axis current references $I_d$ and $I_q$ such that the maximum amount of torque is generated by the machine.

### 4.6.11.2 Field Weakening Control

The images of field weakening control blocks are shown below.

**Images:**

- **For IPM**
- **For IPM Non-linear**
- **For SPM**
- **For Induction Machine**

**Attributes for Field Weakening (IPM):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator resistance)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance of the machine, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_d$ (d-axis inductance)</td>
<td>d-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_q$ (q-axis inductance)</td>
<td>q-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{pk}$ / $krpm$</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant of the machine, in V/krpm (mechanical speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The field weakening (IPM) control block accepts the following input signals, all in per-unit value.

- **Is**: Inverter current amplitude reference
- **Vdc**: DC bus voltage feedback
- **Wm**: Motor mechanical speed, in rad/sec.

It has the following output signals, all in per-unit value:

- **Id**: d-axis current reference
- **Iq**: q-axis current reference

This block is for the control of linear PMSM machines only. When the machine speed is higher than a certain value, the machine will not be able to provide the maximum amount of torque. Instead, it will be limited by the machine power rating. Given the current amplitude reference, dc bus voltage, and the motor speed, the field weakening block will calculate the d-axis and q-axis current references Id and Iq to achieve a maximum power operation.

This block requires the parameters of the PMSM controlled and the inverter voltage and current ratings.

### Attributes for Field Weakening (Non-Linear IPM):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Current</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output current amplitude (peak), in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Voltage</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output voltage amplitude (phase peak), in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>System base voltage value, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>System base current value, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Mechanical Speed</td>
<td>System base mechanical speed, in rad/sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The block has the following inputs and outputs, all in per unit value except Ld, Lq, and Lambda. If base voltage value Vb, Ib, and Wmb are all set to 1, all input and output quantities are in true values.

**Input Signals:**

- **Is**: Inverter current amplitude reference.
- **Ld**: d-axis inductance at the rated operating conditions, in real value in H
- **Lq**: q-axis inductance at the rated operating conditions, in real value in H
- **Lambda**: Peak stator phase flux linkage at the rated operating conditions, in real value in Weber
- **Vdc**: DC bus voltage feedback
- **Wm**: Motor mechanical speed in rad/sec

**Output Signals:**

- **Id**: d-axis current reference.
- **Iq**: q-axis current reference.

This block is for the control of nonlinear interior PMSM (IPM) machines only. It is not for surface mounted PMSM (SPM) machines.

When the machine speed is higher than a certain value, the machine will not be able to generate the maximum power.
torque. Instead, it will be limited by the machine power rating. Given the current amplitude reference, dc bus voltage, and the motor speed, the field weakening control block will calculate the d-axis and q-axis current references $I_d$ and $I_q$ to operate in the constant power region.

**Attributes for Field Weakening (SPM):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$L_d$ (d-axis inductance)</td>
<td>The inductance on d-axis, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{pk}/krpm$</td>
<td>The ratio of peak voltage versus speed, in V/krpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Current</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output current amplitude (peak), in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Inverter Voltage</td>
<td>Maximum inverter output voltage amplitude (phase peak), in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>System base voltage value, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>System base current value, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Mechanical Speed</td>
<td>System base mechanical speed, in rad/sec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The block has the following inputs and outputs, all in per unit value. If base values $V_b$, $I_b$, and $W_{mb}$ are all set at 1, input and output quantities are in real values.

**Input Signals:**
- $I_s$: Inverter current amplitude reference
- $V_{dc}$: DC bus voltage feedback
- $W_m$: Motor mechanical speed

**Output Signal:**
- $I_d$: d-axis current reference
- $I_q$: q-axis current reference

This block is for the control of linear surface-mounted PMSM (SPM) machines only. It is not for internal PMSM (IPM) machines. In a SPM, the d-axis and q-axis inductance values are equal.

When the machine speed is higher than a certain value, the machine will not be able to generate the maximum torque. Instead, it will be limited by the machine power rating. Given the current amplitude, dc bus voltage, and the motor speed, the field weakening control block will calculate the d-axis and q-axis current references $I_d$ and $I_q$ to operate in the constant power region.

**Attributes for Field Weakening (IPM):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R_s$ (stator)</td>
<td>Stator winding resistance of the machine, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{ls}$ (stator leakage)</td>
<td>Stator leakage inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_r$ (rotor)</td>
<td>Rotor winding resistance of the machine, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{lr}$ (rotor leakage)</td>
<td>Rotor leakage inductance of the machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_m$ (magnetizing)</td>
<td>Magnetizing inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated Speed (rpm)</td>
<td>Rated speed of the machine, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC Source Frequency</td>
<td>AC source frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC Voltage (line-line rms)</td>
<td>AC source voltage, line-to-line rms, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>System base voltage value, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>System base current value, in A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The block has the following inputs and outputs, all in per unit value. If base values $V_b$, $I_b$, and $W_{mb}$ are all set at 1.0, all input and output quantities are in real values.

**Input Signals:**
- $V_{dc}$: DC bus voltage
- $W_e$: Stator electrical speed (in per unit, with the base value of $W_{mb}$)

**Output Signal:**
- $I_d$: d-axis current reference

This block is for the control of linear induction machines only.

When the machine speed is higher than a certain value, the machine will not be able to generate the maximum torque. Instead, it will be limited by the machine power rating. Given the dc bus voltage and the stator speed, the field weakening control block will calculate the d-axis current reference $I_d$ to operate in the constant power region.
4.7 **MagCoupler Module**

The MagCoupler Module provides interface for co-simulation between PSIM and the software JMAG. JMAG is an electromagnetic field analysis software for the development and design of electric machines, actuators, and other electrical and electronic devices and components. With the MagCoupler Module, one can perform power electronics and control in PSIM, and electromagnetic field analysis in JMAG.

The MagCoupler Module includes the MagCoupler-DL block and the MagCoupler block, as well as the mechanical elements and speed/torque/position sensors as described in Section 4.9.

The differences between the MagCoupler-DL block and the MagCoupler block are:
- With the MagCoupler block, PSIM and JMAG run at the same time step, whereas with the MagCoupler-DL block, PSIM and JMAG can run at different time steps. The flexibility to set different time steps would make it possible to run JMAG at a larger time step and speed up the overall simulation.
- The interface ports of the MagCoupler block are signal ports. That is, electric currents do not flow into or out of the interface ports, and an electric current must first be converted into a voltage signal before it can be connected to the block. On the other hand, the MagCoupler-DL block is a native power element, and the interface ports behavior in the same way as other power circuit nodes (i.e. voltages can be applied and currents can flow in and out of the nodes). Because of the difference, the MagCoupler-DL block provides more efficient and robust interface between PSIM and JMAG.

To run the MagCoupler Module, the JMAG installation directory and the directories that include the JMAG DLL files "jbdll.dll" and "RT_Dll.dll" must be added to the PSIM’s search path. To add to PSIM’s search path, in PSIM, go to **Options >> Set Path**, and click on **Add Folder**.

Also, the MagCoupler Module requires Microsoft Internet Explorer Version 6 or higher. It will not work with Internet Explorer Version 5.

The description of the MagCoupler-DL block and the MagCoupler block is given below.

### 4.7.1 MagCoupler-DL Block

The MagCoupler-DL block has the following image and properties.

**Image:**

```
\[\text{Image of MagCoupler-DL block}\]
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Netlist XML File</td>
<td>The file defines the interface between PSIM and JMAG. The file extension is .xml.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMAG Input File</td>
<td>The JMAG input data file. It has the .jcf extension. Note that the .xml and .jcf files must be in the same directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMAG Case Text</td>
<td>Comments for the JMAG circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminal Names</td>
<td>Terminal names of the block</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The power circuit nodes and mechanical shaft nodes, as well as the rest of the interface between PSIM and the JMAG data files, are defined in the **Netlist XML File**. This file is in XML format, and is generated by JMAG. To specify this file, click on the browse button at the right of the edit field.
When a specific XML is selected, the .jcf data file will be read, and the terminals (nodes) of the block will be displayed. In the block image, the power circuit nodes will be placed at the top of the block, arranged from the left to the right. The mechanical shaft nodes will be placed on the left and right of the block, with the first shaft node on the right, and the second shaft node on the left.

The **JMAG Input File** is the JMAG data file for the device modeled. The file has the .jcf extension and is defined in the netlist XML file. Note that the .jcf file and the .xml file must be in the same directory.

The **JMAG Case Text** is a text identifying the specific JMAG study case. It can be any text.

The parameters of a sample permanent-magnet synchronous machine is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dt_of_JMAG</td>
<td>Time step used in JMAG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ir</td>
<td>Rated current. It is used in JMAG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dl_threshold</td>
<td>Current threshold. It is used in JMAG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dr_threshold</td>
<td>Displacement threshold. It is used in JMAG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the machine, in kg*m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft Time Constant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant of the machine, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back emf Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for all FEM coil currents (1: display; 0: no display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotor Angle Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for all shaft angles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for all shaft speeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for all developed torques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaft1 Master Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please consult JMAG manuals and documents on how to set up the co-simulation on the JMAG side.

### 4.7.2 MagCoupler Block

The MagCoupler block has the following image and properties.

**Image:**

![Block with 4 inputs and 4 outputs](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Link Table File</td>
<td>The XML file that defines the interface between PSIM and JMAG. It has the .xml extension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMAG Input File</td>
<td>The JCF input data file for JMAG. It has the .jcf extension. Note that the .xml file and the .jcf file must be in the same directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4: Power Circuit Components

The number of input and output nodes may vary, depending on the actual number of input/output nodes in a particular circuit.

The MagCoupler block accepts voltages, currents, and positions as inputs, and it provides voltages, currents, positions, torques, and force as the outputs. In PSIM, the MagCoupler block is a power circuit element. The way it interfaces with the rest of the circuit is that both the inputs and outputs are voltage signals (no electric current flows into the input node). To convert a branch current into a voltage signal, or vice versa, one can use a current-controlled voltage source, or voltage-controlled current source.

The Link Table File, in XML format, defines the input/output interface and corresponding functions in JMAG. This file is generated automatically by JMAG. To locate this file, click on the browse button at the right of the edit field.

The JMAG Input File is the JCF input data file that is read by the JMAG solver. The name is defined in the Link Table File.

Note that JCF input file .jcf must be in the same directory as the input link table file .xml. If any material database is used in JMAG, it should also be placed in the directory of the .xml file. Also, the .xml file does not have to be in the same directory as the schematic file. However, if a .xml file with the same name is present in the schematic directory, PSIM will read the one in the schematic directory first.

The JMAG Case Text is a text identifying the specific JMAG circuit. It can be any text describing the JMAG circuit.

The IN Nodes are the nodes through which PSIM passes the values to JMAG. In the MagCoupler block image, the order of the input nodes is from the top to the bottom. The order can be changed by highlighting the node and click on the upper or down arrow.

The OUT Nodes are the nodes through which JMAG passes the values back to PSIM. In the MagCoupler block image, the order of the output nodes is from the top to the bottom. The order can be changed by highlighting the node and click on the upper or down arrow.

By clicking on the Edit Image button, one can edit and customize the image of the MagCoupler block. Clicking on the Display File button will display the Link Table File in the Microsoft Internet Explorer environment, and clicking on the Read File button will read or re-load the Link Table File.

**Set-up in JMAG and PSIM:**

Using the MagCoupler block, it is easy to set up the link between JMAG and PSIM for co-simulation. It involves two main steps: setting up the circuit in JMAG and generating the link table file, and loading the link table file into PSIM.

An inductor example below is used to illustrate this process.

In the PSIM circuit of this example, the circuit on the left uses the built-in inductor element from the PSIM library, and the circuit on the right has the inductor implemented in JMAG. In this case, the inductor is modelled as a controlled current source in PSIM. The voltage across the inductor is first converted to a node-to-ground voltage through a voltage-controlled voltage source, and the value is passed to the input node VL of the MagCoupler block. At each time step, PSIM calls JMAG functions which calculate the inductor current based on the voltage input. This current is then sent back to PSIM in the voltage form, and is used to control the current source that represents the inductor.

In the JMAG circuit of this example, the voltage function (on the left side) receives the voltage from PSIM, and through the current probe in series with the FEM coil, the current is calculated and sent back to PSIM. The inductor structure in the JMAG environment is shown on the lower right.
The setup process of calling JMAG in PSIM through the MagCoupler block is as follows.

**In JMAG:**
- In the JMAG circuit, connect a voltage function to the right of the FEM coil. Under Electrical Potential in the property window, choose Constant Value, and set Constant Value [V] to 0.
- Connect a current probe to the left of the FEM coil.
- Connect another voltage function to the left of the current probe (the circuit will look like what is shown above). In the property window, choose Cooperates with an external circuit simulator.
- Highlight the inductor structure window. Go to the menu Conditions >> Create Conditions. From the Conditions List, highlight Coupled External Circuit Simulator, and click Modify.
- On the Coupled External Circuit Simulator dialog window, there are two lists. The list on the right, called JMAG, contains all the functions that can be used to interface with PSIM. The list on the left, called External Circuit Simulator, contains the functions that are selected to interface with PSIM. In this case, there are two items in the JMAG list, one is the Voltage Function, and the other is the Current Probe.
- Highlight the Voltage Function, and click on the <- button to move the item from the list on the right to the list on the left. Repeat the same step to the Current Probe. Now both items should appear in the list on the left.
- Highlight the Voltage Function, and change the terminal name to VL. Also, change the Current Probe terminal name to iL. Close the dialog window.
- Go to the menu File >> Export and select JCF... With the JCF file name defined as "inductor", the JCF file "inductor.jcf" and the link table file "inductor_csl.xml" will be generated.
- Copy the JCF file "inductor.jcf" and the link table file "inductor_csl.xml" to the folder containing the PSIM schematic file "inductor_jmag.sch". Rename the link table file to "inductor_jmag.xml". Note that the XML file does not have to be renamed, and both the JCF and XML files do not have to be moved to the folder of the schematic file. They are done here for the simplicity of file management.

**In PSIM:**
- After the rest of the power circuit is created, go to Elements >> Power >> MagCoupler Module, and select MagCoupler Block. Place the block on the schematic.
- Double click on the MagCoupler block to bring out the property window. Click on the browser button \(\ldots\) next to the **Link Table File** edit field to locate and select the file "inductor_jmag.xml". After the file is read, the property window will display the IN node \(VL\) and the OUT node \(iL\).
- Connect the MagCoupler block to the rest of the circuit in the schematic.

The setup is now complete and the simulation is ready to run.

### 4.8 MagCoupler-RT Module

The MagCoupler-RT Module provides interface between PSIM and JMAG-RT data files. JMAG-RT is another way of modeling electromagnetic devices. The JMAG-RT data files are obtained by running the JMAG simulation in advance, and the data files are stored in a lookup table form. During the PSIM simulation, JMAG is not needed, and PSIM interfaces directly with the JMAG-RT data.

A big advantage of JMAG-RT is that, since JMAG-RT data files are obtained from JMAG simulation, the accuracy of the JMAG-RT model is comparable to that of a JMAG model. However, since JMAG is not involved in PSIM simulation, the simulation is significantly faster.

The MagCoupler-RT Module includes the blocks described in this section, and mechanical elements and speed/torque/position sensors as described in Section 4.9.

Four MagCoupler-RT blocks are provided:
- 3-phase permanent-magnet synchronous machine (PMSM)
- 2-phase step machine
- Linear synchronous machine
- Linear solenoid

The iron loss of PMSM can also be taken into account. When a PMSM RT file contains iron loss data, PSIM will model the iron loss with a parallel resistor \(R_{\text{loss}}\) across the phase branch, and will display the eddy current loss \(P_{\text{loss, eddy}}\) and hysteresis loss \(P_{\text{loss, hys}}\). For more information on how iron loss is modeled, please refer to relevant JSOL document.

Images of the MagCoupler-RT blocks are shown below.

**Images:**
In the MagCoupler-RT block images, the power circuit nodes (such as A, B, C, A+, A-, B+, B-, C+, C-, D+, and D- as shown above) are placed at the top of the block, arranged from the left to the right. The mechanical shaft nodes are placed on the left and right of the block, with the first shaft node (such as M+ as shown above) on the right, and the second shaft node (such as M-) on the left.

The electric nodes and rotor shaft nodes, as well as the rest of the interface between PSIM and the JMAG-RT data files (.rtt file), are defined in the Netlist XML File. This file is in XML format, and is generated by the JMAG-RT Manager. To specify this file, click on the browse button at the right of the edit field.

Note that for each type of MagCoupler-RT block, the "NetlistElement" must be the same as the predefined name. The predefined names are:

- "PM Synchronous Machine" for 3-phase PMSM
- "Step Machine" for 2-phase step machine
- "Linear Synchronous Machine" for linear synchronous machine
- "Linear Solenoid" for linear solenoid

For example, the first several lines of a netlist XML file for a PMSM may look like the following:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<CircuitElement file="imp.rtt" name="MagCoupler-RT">
<NetlistElement type="JMAGRT" element="PM Synchronous Machine" pole_number="4">
  ... ...
</NetlistElement>
</CircuitElement>
```

The JMAG-RT Input File is the JMAG-RT data file for the device modeled. The file has the .rtt extension and is defined in the netlist XML file. Note that the .rtt file and the .xml file must be in the same directory.

The JMAG Case Text is a text identifying the specific JMAG-RT study case. It can be any text.

The Terminal Names are the names of the interface nodes.

The parameters of a 3-phase PMSM is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shaft1_MomentofInertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the machine, in kg*m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaft1_ShaftTimeConstant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant of the machine, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RU_resistance</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase U, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV_resistance</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase V, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RW_resistance</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase W, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OffsetAngle</td>
<td>Initial rotor angle, in mechanical deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_inductance</td>
<td>Inductance coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_flux</td>
<td>Flux coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_torque</td>
<td>Torque coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_magnet</td>
<td>Magnet coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The parameters of a 2-phase step machine are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coef_material</td>
<td>Material coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turns_coil1</td>
<td>Coil 1 turns (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turns_coil2</td>
<td>Coil 2 turns (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil currents (1: display; 0: no display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: When iron loss is present, this current is only the current flowing through the FEM coil. The total phase current will be the sum of this current and the current through the iron loss resistor $R_{loss}$. To view the total phase current, use an ammeter externally.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back emf Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil back emf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotor Angle Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the rotor angle in mechanical deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the shaft mechanical speed in rad/sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the developed torque in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Loss Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the power loss if iron loss is present. When the flag is set, the eddy current loss $P_{loss_eddy}$ and hysteresis loss $P_{loss_hys}$ will be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaft1 Master Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the machine (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The parameters of a linear solenoid are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RA</td>
<td>Resistance of the solenoid, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>Mass of the solenoid, in kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The parameters of a linear synchronous machine are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ShaftTimeConstant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant of the solenoid, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpringConstant</td>
<td>Spring constant of the solenoid (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DispLimitMax</td>
<td>Maximum limit of the displacement of the solenoid, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DispLimitMin</td>
<td>Minimum limit of the displacement of the solenoid, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OffsetDisp</td>
<td>Initial displacement, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turns_coil2</td>
<td>Coil 2 turns (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_mass1</td>
<td>Mass 1 coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_mass2</td>
<td>Mass 2 coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil currents (1: display; 0: no display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back emf Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil back emf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the solenoid position in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velocity Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the solenoid velocity in m/sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the developed force in N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mass1 Master Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag of the solenoid (1: master; 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The parameters of a linear synchronous machine are shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RU</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase U, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase V, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RW</td>
<td>Resistance of Phase W, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td>Mass of the machine, in kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShaftTimeConstant</td>
<td>Shaft time constant of the solenoid, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OffsetDisp</td>
<td>Initial displacement, in m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_inductance</td>
<td>Inductance coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_flux</td>
<td>Flux coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_force</td>
<td>Torque coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_magnet</td>
<td>Magnet coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_material</td>
<td>Material coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turns_coil1</td>
<td>Coil 1 turns (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turns_coil2</td>
<td>Coil 2 turns (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_mass1</td>
<td>Mass 1 coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coef_mass2</td>
<td>Mass 2 coefficient (used in JMAG-RT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil currents (1: display; 0: no display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back emf Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for 3-phase FEM coil back emf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position Flag</td>
<td>Display flag for the solenoid position in m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In all the parameter definitions above, except the flags (current flag, back emf flag, rotor angle/position flag, speed/velocity flag, torque/force flag, and master flag), all other parameters are read from the .rtt file defined in the XML file. These values can be changed, and for these parameters noted with "used in JMAG-RT", the changed values will be sent back to JMAG-RT for calculation.

Several MagCoupler-RT examples are provided under the "examples\MagCoupler-RT" folder.

4.9 Mechanical Elements and Sensors

This section describes elements that are shared by Motor Drive Module, MagCoupler Module, and MagCoupler-RT Module. The elements include mechanical loads, gear boxes, mechanical coupling blocks, mechanical-electrical interface blocks, and various speed/torque/position sensors.

4.9.1 Mechanical Loads

Several mechanical load models are provided: constant-torque, constant-power, constant-speed, general-type, and externally controlled loads.

4.9.1.1 Constant-Torque Load

The image of a constant-torque load is:

![Image]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant Torque</td>
<td>Torque constant $T_{\text{const}}$, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the load, in kg*m²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the reference direction of a mechanical system enters the dotted terminal, the load is along the reference direction, and the loading torque to the master machine is $T_{\text{const}}$. Otherwise the loading torque will be $-T_{\text{const}}$.

See Section 2.6.1 for more detailed explanation on the reference direction.

A constant-torque load is expressed as:

$$T_L = T_{\text{const}}$$

The torque does not depend on the speed direction.

4.9.1.2 Constant-Power Load

The image of a constant-power load is:

![Image]
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Torque</td>
<td>Maximum torque $T_{\text{max}}$ of the load, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Speed</td>
<td>Base speed $n_{\text{base}}$ of the load, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the load, in kg*m$^2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The torque-speed curve of a constant-power load is shown below:

When the mechanical speed is less than the base speed $n_{\text{base}}$, the load torque is:

$$T_L = T_{\text{max}}$$

When the mechanical speed is above the base speed, the load torque is:

$$T_L = \frac{P}{\omega_m}$$

where $P = T_{\text{max}} \omega_{\text{base}}$ and $\omega_{\text{base}} = 2\pi n_{\text{base}}/60$. The mechanical speed $\omega_m$ is in rad./sec.

4.9.1.3 Constant-Speed Load

The image of a constant-speed load is:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Constant Speed (rpm)</td>
<td>Speed constant, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the load, in kg*m$^2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A constant-speed mechanical load defines the speed of a mechanical system, and the speed will remain constant, as defined by the speed constant.
4.9.1.4 General-Type Load

The image of a general-type mechanical load is as follows.

Image:

\[ T_L = \text{sign}(\omega_m) \cdot (T_c + k_1 \cdot \omega_m + k_2 \cdot \omega_m^2 + k_3 \cdot \omega_m^3) \]

where \( \omega_m \) is the mechanical speed in rad./sec.

Note that the torque of the general-type load is dependent on the speed direction.

A general-type load is expressed as:

\[ T_L = \text{sign}(\omega_m) \cdot (T_c + k_1 \cdot \omega_m + k_2 \cdot \omega_m^2 + k_3 \cdot \omega_m^3) \]

4.9.1.5 Externally-Controlled Load

An externally-controlled mechanical load is used to define a load of an arbitrary load profile.

Image:

\[ T_L = \text{sign}(\omega_m) \cdot (T_c + k_1 \cdot \omega_m + k_2 \cdot \omega_m^2 + k_3 \cdot \omega_m^3) \]

where \( \omega_m \) is the mechanical speed in rad./sec.

Note that the torque of the general-type load is dependent on the speed direction.
4.9.2 Gear Box

The image is a gear box is shown below.

Image:

![Gear Box Diagram]

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gear Ratio</td>
<td>The gear ratio $a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft 1 Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag for Shaft 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaft 2 Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag for Shaft 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The shaft with the bigger dot is Shaft 1.

If the numbers of teeth of the first gear and the second gear are $n_1$ and $n_2$, respectively, the gear ratio $a$ is defined as: $a = n_1 / n_2$. Let the radius, torque, and speed of these two gears be: $r_1$, $r_2$, $T_1$, $T_2$, $\omega_1$, and $\omega_2$, we have: $T_1 / T_2 = r_1 / r_2 = \omega_2 / \omega_1 = a$.

The two shafts of the gear box can be in either master mode or slave mode. For more information on the definition and use of the master/slave flag, refer to Section 4.6.1.

4.9.3 Mechanical Coupling Block

The mechanical coupler block is used to couple two mechanical systems.

Image:

![Mechanical Coupling Block Diagram]

This block is used in situations where both mechanical systems have a device in the master mode, and they must be connected together to form one system. Based on the connection convention in PSIM, a mechanical system can have only one master device. In this case, the mechanical coupling block can be inserted in between, and the mechanical system on each side of the coupling block can have its own device in the master mode.

4.9.4 Mechanical-Electrical Interface Block

This block allows users to access the internal equivalent circuit of the mechanical system of a machine.

Image:

![Mechanical-Electrical Interface Block Diagram]

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Flag for the master/slave mode (1: master, 0: slave)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similar to electric machines, the mechanical-electrical interface block can be used to define the reference direction of a mechanical system through the master/slave flag. When the interface block is set to the master mode, the reference direction is along the mechanical shaft, away from the mechanical node, and towards the rest of the mechanical elements.
Let’s assume that a drive system consists of a motor (with a developed torque of $T_{em}$ and a moment of inertia of $J_1$) and a mechanical load (with a load torque of $T_{load}$ and a moment of inertia of $J_2$). The equation that describes the mechanical system is:

$$(J_1 + J_2) \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - T_{load}$$

where $\omega_m$ is the shaft mechanical speed. In PSIM, this equation is modelled by an equivalent circuit as shown below.

In this circuit, the two current sources have the values of $T_{em}$ and $T_{load}$ and the capacitors have the values of $J_1$ and $J_2$. The node-to-ground voltage (speed node voltage) represents the mechanical speed $\omega_m$. This is analogous to $C \frac{dV}{dt} = i$ for a capacitor where $C = J_1 + J_2$, $V = \omega_m$, and $i = T_{em} - T_{load}$.

In PSIM, mechanical equivalent circuits for motors and mechanical loads all use the capacitor-based circuit model. The mechanical-electrical interface block provides the access to the internal mechanical equivalent circuit. If the mechanical side of an interface block (with the letters “M”) is connected to a mechanical shaft, the electrical side (with the letters “E”) will be the speed node of the mechanical equivalent circuit. One can thus connect any electrical circuits to this node.

With this element, users can connect built-in motors or mechanical loads with user-defined load or motor models.

**Example: An induction machine with a custom mechanical load model**

The figure below shows an induction machine connected to a user defined mechanical load model through the mechanical-electrical interface block. As explained above, the voltage at the electrical side represents the shaft mechanical speed. A current source flowing out of this node represents a mechanical load, and a capacitor connected to this node represents the load moment of inertia.

**Example: A custom machine model with a constant-torque load**

Similarly, one can build a custom machine model and connect it to the mechanical load in PSIM. The figure below shows such a circuit. The custom machine model must use the capacitor analogy to model the mechanical equation. The node representing the mechanical speed is then made available and is connected to the electrical side of the mechanical-electrical interface block.
4.9.5 Speed/Torque Sensors

A speed sensor or torque sensor is used to measure the mechanical speed or torque.

Images:

![Speed Sensor and Torque Sensor](image)

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the sensor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output of the speed sensor is in rpm.

The output of the speed/torque sensor depends on how the sensor is connected in a mechanical system.

For the speed sensor, if the sensor is along the reference direction of the mechanical system (refer to Section 4.6.1 for more details on the definition and use of the reference direction), a positive mechanical speed would give a positive sensor output. Otherwise, if the sensor is opposite to the reference direction of the mechanical system, a positive mechanical speed would give a negative sensor output.

For example, in the mechanical system below, Speed Sensor 1 is along the reference direction, and Speed Sensor 2 is opposite to the reference direction of the mechanical system. If the actual mechanical speed is positive, the output of Speed Sensor 1 will be positive, and the output of Speed Sensor 2 will be negative.

![Mechanical System Diagram](image)

The torque sensor measures the torque difference between the dotted side of the sensor and the undotted side. To understand the physical meaning of the torque sensor measurement, we use the diagram below as an illustration.

The figure on the left shows a torque sensor connected with a 10-N*m mechanical load, and the reference direction of the mechanical system is from left to right. Based on the reference direction, if we use the right-hand method, by pointing the thumb in the reference direction and rotating the right hand, the direction of the fingers will show the direction of the positive speed and torque. The physical interpretation of the system is shown on the right.

![Torque Sensor Diagram](image)

In this case, the direction of the positive speed and torque is in the clockwise direction. The dotted side of the sensor is on the left, and the load is in such a way that it tries to slow down the shaft (the load torque is in the counter-clockwise direction).

The physical meaning of the torque sensor is that, if the dotted side of the sensor is fixed, the sensor will measure the torque tension on the undotted side of the sensor, and a positive sensor output would mean that the
torque is opposite to the direction of the speed reference. Therefore, for the example above, the positive speed reference is in the clockwise direction, and the load torque is in the counter-clockwise direction. This will give a torque sensor reading of 10 N*m.

Similarly, if the undotted side of the sensor is fixed, the sensor will measure the torque tension on the dotted side of the sensor, in the positive direction of the speed reference. For example, in the system below, the torque sensor is flipped with the dotted side on the right. If the undotted side is fixed, the load torque is applied to the dotted side of the sensor, in the opposite direction of the speed reference. The torque sensor output will be -10 N*m instead.

To understand how the torque sensor is modeled in the equivalent circuit of the mechanical system, we use the following system as an example.

The system consists of one machine, 2 torque sensors, and 2 mechanical loads. The torques and moment of inertia for the machine and the loads are as labelled in the diagram. The reference direction of this mechanical system is from left to right. The equation for this system can be written as:

\[
(J + J_{L1} + J_{L2}) \cdot \frac{d\omega_m}{dt} = T_{em} - T_{L1} - T_{L2}
\]

The equivalent electrical circuit of the equation is shown below:

The node voltage in the circuit represents the mechanical speed \(\omega_m\). The current probe on the left represents the reading of the Torque Sensor 1. Similarly, the current probe on the right represents the reading of the Torque Sensor 2. Note that the second current probe is from right to left since Sensor 2 is opposite to the reference direction of the mechanical system.

The equivalent circuit also illustrates how mechanical power is transferred. The multiplication of the current to the voltage, which is the same as the torque times the mechanical speed, represents the mechanical power. If the power is positive, it is transferred in the direction of the speed \(\omega_m\).

### 4.9.6 Position Sensors

Four types of position sensors are provided: absolute encoder, incremental encoder, resolver, and hall effect position sensor. They are connected to the mechanical shaft, similar to the speed sensor and torque sensor, and
the output signals are control signals.

4.9.6.1 Absolute Encoder

An absolute encoder is a position sensor that provides the shaft position within a 360° range (mechanical degree).

Image:

```
\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,shape=circle] (a) at (0,0) {a};
\node[draw,shape=circle] (b) at (1,0) {p};
\node[draw,shape=circle] (c) at (0,-1) {s};
\node[draw,shape=circle] (d) at (1,-1) {t};
\node[draw,shape=rectangle] (e) at (0.5,-2) {Count};
\node[draw,shape=rectangle] (f) at (1.5,-2) {Position};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position (deg.)</td>
<td>Initial shaft position, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Bits of Resolution</td>
<td>Number of Bits of resolution N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The encoder output resolution is determined by the number of bits N. The encoder has two outputs: one is the number of counts (the range is from 0 to \(2^N-1\)), and the other is the position, in mechanical deg. (the range is from 0 to 360°).

An example of a PMSM drive system using the absolute encoder is given in the sample file "Absolute Encoder PMSM Drive.sch".

4.9.6.2 Incremental Encoder

An incremental encoder is a position sensor that produces quadrature outputs which indicate the speed, angle, and direction of the shaft.

Image:

```
\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,shape=circle] (a) at (0,0) {A};
\node[draw,shape=circle] (b) at (1,0) {B};
\node[draw,shape=circle] (c) at (0,-1) {Z};
\node[draw,shape=rectangle] (d) at (0.5,-2) {A \bar{A}};
\node[draw,shape=rectangle] (e) at (1.5,-2) {ar{B} Z \bar{Z}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
```

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position (deg.)</td>
<td>Initial shaft position, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Lines</td>
<td>Number of lines that are in the code pattern of the code disk of the encoder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The two quadrature outputs are A and \(\bar{A}\) (\(\bar{A}\) is the inverse of A), and B and \(\bar{B}\). They are offset by 90°. In addition, the encoder provides separate index signal output Z and \(\bar{Z}\) that provide one count per revolution.

An example of an induction motor drive system using the incremental encoder is given in the sample file "Incremental Encoder INDM Drive.sch".

4.9.6.3 Resolver

A resolver is essentially a rotary transformer with one rotor winding and two stator windings. These two stator
windings, referring to as the COS winding and SIN winding, are located 90° apart.
As the shaft rotates, the output voltages of the COS and SIN windings vary as the cosine and sine functions of
the shaft angle.

Image:

![Diagram of resolver windings](image)

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position (deg.)</td>
<td>Initial shaft position, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the resolver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The resolver has four outputs: cos+, cos- (the inverse of cos+), sin+, and sin- (the inverse of sin+). The peak
amplitude of all the outputs is 1.
An example of a PMSM drive system using the resolver is given in the sample file "Resolver PMSM
Drive.sch".

### 4.9.6.4 Hall Effect Sensor

A hall effect sensor is a type of position sensors that provides three pulses depending on the shaft position. The
sensor consists of a set of semiconductor switches and trigger magnets. The switches open or close when the
magnetic field is higher or lower than a certain threshold value.

Image:

![Diagram of hall effect sensor](image)

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Position (deg.)</td>
<td>Initial shaft position, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the sensor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The hall effect sensor provides three logic signal outputs A, B, and C, which are spaced 120 electrical deg.
apart.
The hall effect sensor is the same as the built-in hall effect sensor in the brushless dc machine.
Examples of BDCM motor drive systems using the hall effect sensor are given in the "examples" sub-folder of
the PSIM directory.
4.10 Thermal Module

The Thermal Module is an add-on module to the PSIM program. It provides a quick way of estimating the losses of semiconductor devices (diodes, IGBT, MOSFET (including SiC), and GaN), as well as the core and winding losses of inductors.

The core of the Thermal Module is the device database. A device database editor is provided to allow users to add new devices to the database and to manage the database easily. The devices in the database can then be used in the simulation for the loss calculation.

A database device simulation contains two parts of calculation:

- The behavior model of the device is used in the simulation. The behavior model of a switch takes into account the static characteristics (such as conduction voltage drop, on-state resistance, etc.), but not the dynamic characteristics (such as turn-on and turn-off transients). The behavior model of an inductor is an ideal inductor.
- Based on the voltage, current, and temperature values from the simulation, for switches, PSIM accesses the device database and calculates the conduction losses or switching losses. The static characteristics of the device are updated for the next simulation. For inductors, PSIM accesses the device database and calculates the core and winding losses.

In switch loss calculation, voltage and current values of a device right before and after the switching instant are used. For a device operating in hard switching, if a snubber circuit is present, it will change the voltage and current waveforms and will result in incorrect loss calculation. It is recommended that snubber circuits be temporarily disabled when using Thermal Module devices for loss calculation.

Loss calculation of inductors takes into account the material characteristics of the device (such as core material, shape, winding type, size, and air gap, etc.).

Note that the loss calculation is only an approximation, and the accuracy of the results depends on the accuracy of the device data as well as the proper scaling of the results from the device test condition to the actual circuit operating conditions. Users should always verify the results with the measurement from experimental setup.

4.10.1 Diode Thermal Model

4.10.1.1 Diode Device in Database

The following information is defined for a diode device in the database:

**General Information:**

- Manufacturer: Device manufacture
- Part Number: Manufacturer’s part number
- Package: It can be discrete, dual, or 3-phase bridge package, as shown in the figure below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discrete</th>
<th>Dual (Type I)</th>
<th>Dual (Type II)</th>
<th>Dual (Type III)</th>
<th>3-phase Bridge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diode Device Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diode Device Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diode Device Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diode Device Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diode Device Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, beside the diode anode and cathode terminals, there are two extra nodes. The node with a dot is for the diode conduction losses $P_{cond}$ and the node without a dot is for the diode switching losses $P_{sw}$.

The style of the package (for example, TO-220, TO-247, etc.) can be specified in the *Style* field.

**Absolute Maximum Ratings:**
$V_{\text{rrm}, \text{max}}$ (V): Peak reverse blocking voltage

$I_{\text{F,max}}$ (A): Maximum dc current

$T_{\text{j,max}}$ (°C): Maximum junction temperature

**Electrical Characteristics:**

- $V_d$ vs. $I_F$: Forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ vs. forward current $I_F$
- $t_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $I_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Peak reverse recovery current $I_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $Q_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $E_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery energy losses $E_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$

**Thermal Characteristics:**

- $R_{\text{th(j-c)}}$: Junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- $R_{\text{th(c-s)}}$: Case-to-sink thermal resistance, in °C/W

**Dimensions and Weight:**

- Length (mm): Length of the device, in mm
- Height (mm): Height of the device, in mm
- Weight (g): Weight of the device, in g

Note that the condition "Reverse blocking voltage VR (V)" in characteristics $E_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$ is used to scale the loss calculation, and must be entered correctly.

Also, parameters under Absolute Maximum Ratings, Thermal Characteristics, and Dimensions and Weight are not used in the loss calculation, and are optional.

In addition, the diode forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ changes depending on the forward current $I_F$. The new voltage drop is used in the subsequent simulation.

### 4.10.1.2 Diode Loss Calculation

A diode device in the database can be selected and used in the simulation for loss calculation. A diode in the Thermal Module library has the following parameters:

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific device selected from the device database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz, under which the losses are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{cond}}$</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{cond}}$ of the conduction loss $P_{\text{cond}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{sw}}$</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{sw}}$ of the switching loss $P_{\text{sw}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Parallel Devices</td>
<td>Number of identical diode devices in parallel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter *Frequency* refers to the frequency under which losses are calculated. For example, if the device operates at the switching frequency of 10 kHz, and *Frequency* is also set to 10 kHz, the losses will be the value for one switching period. However, if *Frequency* is set to 60 Hz, the losses will be the value for a period of 60 Hz.

Parameter *$P_{\text{cond Calibration Factor}}$* is the correction factor for the conduction loss. For the example, if the calculated conduction loss before the correction is $P_{\text{cond_cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{cond}} = K_{\text{cond}} \times P_{\text{cond_cal}}$$

Similarly, Parameter *$P_{\text{sw Calibration Factor}}$* is the correction factor for the switching loss. For the example, if the calculated switching loss before the correction is $P_{\text{sw_cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{sw}} = K_{\text{sw}} \times P_{\text{sw_cal}}$$
When several identical diodes are in parallel, one should have just one device in the schematic, and set the correct number of devices in the parameter input. This is because when several identical devices are in parallel in the schematic, the device currents may not be exactly equal due to small differences in the simulation. When the number of parallel devices is greater than one, the total current through the group of the parallel devices will be equally divided among the devices. The total losses are then obtained by multiplying the losses in each device by the number of parallel devices. The currents flowing out of Nodes $P_{\text{cond}}$ and $P_{\text{sw}}$ are the total losses of all the parallel devices combined.

The voltage at the conduction loss node $P_{\text{cond}}$ or the switching loss node $P_{\text{sw}}$ represents the calculated junction temperature $T_j$ of the diode, and this junction temperature is used when the database curves are used for loss calculation. If the calculated $T_j$ is between the junction temperatures of two curves, interpolation will be used. If the calculated $T_j$ is lower than the lowest $T_j$ or higher than the highest $T_j$ in the curves, the curve corresponding to the lowest or highest $T_j$ will be used. If there is only one curve, that curve is used regardless of the calculated $T_j$.

**Conduction Loss:**

The diode conduction loss is calculated as:

$$\text{Conduction Loss} = V_d \times I_F$$

where $V_d$ is the diode voltage drop, and $I_F$ is the diode forward current. When the diode is conducting periodically with an on duty cycle of $D$, the conduction losses are calculated as:

$$\text{Conduction Loss} = V_d \times I_F \times D$$

**Switching Loss:**

In calculating the switching loss, the diode turn-on loss is neglected and is not considered.

The diode turn-off loss due to the reverse recovery is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{sw\_off}} = E_{rr} \times f \times V_R / V_{R\_datasheet}$$

or

$$P_{\text{sw\_off}} = 1/4 \times Q_{rr} \times V_R \times f$$

where $E_{rr}$ is the reverse recovery energy loss, $Q_{rr}$ is the reverse recovery charge, $f$ is the frequency as defined in the input parameter Frequency, $V_R$ is the actual reverse blocking voltage, and $V_{R\_datasheet}$ is the reverse blocking voltage in the $E_{rr}$ characteristics of the datasheet, defined as "Reverse blocking voltage VR (V)" in the test conditions.

If only one point is given for $Q_{rr}$, the loss calculation will be scaled based on the actual current $I_F$ as follows:

$$P_{\text{sw\_off}} = 1/4 \times Q_{rr} \times V_R \times f \times I_F / I_{F\_datasheet}$$

where $I_{F\_datasheet}$ is the test condition current under which $Q_{rr}$ and $t_{rr}$ are obtained.

The reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$ is defined as:

$$Q_{rr} = 1/2 \times t_{rr} \times I_{rr}$$

Whenever $E_{rr}$ is given in the device database, the loss will be calculated based on $E_{rr}$. If $E_{rr}$ is not given, the loss will be calculated based on $Q_{rr}$. If $Q_{rr}$ is not given, the loss will be calculated based on $t_{rr}$ and $I_{rr}$. If both are not given, the loss will be treated as 0.

The losses $P_{\text{cond}}$ and $P_{\text{sw\_off}}$ in watts, are represented in the form of currents which flow out of these nodes. Therefore, to measure and display the loss, an ammeter should be connected between the $P_{\text{cond}}$ or $P_{\text{sw}}$ node and the ground. When they are not used, these two nodes cannot be floating, and must be connected to ground.

**Example: Diode Loss Calculation**

The circuit below shows a sample circuit that uses the Powerex’s discrete diode CS240650 (600V, 50A). The conduction losses and the switching losses are measured through two ammeters.
Once the information of the losses is available, by building the thermal equivalent circuit, the device junction temperature can be calculated. This junction temperature is in turn fed back and used in the loss calculation. The circuit shows a thermal circuit without considering the thermal transient.

### 4.10.2 IGBT Thermal Model

#### 4.10.2.1 IGBT Device in Database

An IGBT device has three types of packages: discrete, dual, or 6-pack.

For the dual package, both the top and the bottom switches can be IGBT’s (full-bridge configuration), or one of the switches is IGBT and the other is a free-wheeling diode (half-bridge configuration). For the half-bridge dual IGBT device, since the free-wheeling diode parameters can be different from those of the anti-parallel diode, this type of device is referred to as the IGBT-Diode device, and is treated as a different type in the simulation. But for the convenience of discussion, both devices are referred to as the IGBT devices here.

The following information is defined for an IGBT device in the database:

**General Information:**
- Manufacturer: Device manufacture
- Part Number: Manufacturer’s part number
- Package: It can be discrete, dual, or 6-pack, as shown in the figure below

**Images:**

In the images, beside the IGBT and diode terminal nodes, there are four extra nodes from the top to the bottom (or from the left to the right on the top for the 6-pack package). They are the nodes for transistor conductor loss $P_{cond, Q}$ (the node with a circle), for transistor switching loss $P_{sw, Q}$, for diode conductor loss $P_{cond, D}$ (the node with a square), and for diode switching loss $P_{sw, D}$, respectively.

The style of the package (for example, TO-247, TO-268, etc.) can be specified in the **Style** field.

**Absolute Maximum Ratings:**
- $V_{ce, \text{max}}$ (V): Maximum collector-emitter voltage
I_{c,max} (A): Maximum collector current
T_{j,max} (^oC): Maximum junction temperature

**Electrical Characteristics - Transistor:**
- $V_{ce(sat)}$ vs. $I_c$: Collector-emitter saturation voltage $V_{ce(sat)}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{on}$ vs. $I_c$: Turn-on energy loss $E_{on}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{off}$ vs. $I_c$: Turn-off energy loss $E_{off}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{on}$ vs. $R_G$: Turn-on energy loss $E_{on}$ vs. gate resistance $R_G$
- $E_{off}$ vs. $R_G$: Turn-off energy loss $E_{off}$ vs. gate resistance $R_G$

**Electrical Characteristics - Diode (or Anti-Parallel Diode):**
- $V_d$ vs. $I_F$: Forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ vs. forward current $I_F$
- $t_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $I_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Peak reverse recovery current $I_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $Q_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $E_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery energy loss $E_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $E_{rr}$ vs. $R_G$: Reverse recovery energy loss $E_{rr}$ vs. gate resistance $R_G$

**Electrical Characteristics - Free-Wheeling Diode (for IGBT-Diode device only):**
- $V_d$ vs. $I_F$: Forward conduction voltage drop vs. forward current $I_F$
- $t_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $I_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Peak reverse recovery current $I_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $Q_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$
- $E_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$: Reverse recovery energy loss $E_{rr}$ vs. current $I_F$

**Thermal Characteristics:**
- $R_{th(j-c)}$ (transistor): Transistor junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- $R_{th(j-c)}$ (diode): Diode junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- $R_{th(c-s)}$: Case-to-sink thermal resistance, in °C/W

**Dimensions and Weight:**
- Length (mm): Length of the device, in mm
- Width (mm): Width of the device, in mm
- Height (mm): Height of the device, in mm
- Weight (g): Weight of the device, in g

Note that the values "Voltage VCE (V)" and "Gate resistance RG (Ohm)" in the "Other Test Conditions" of the $E_{on}$ vs. $I_c$ curve are used to scale the loss calculation for $E_{on}$, $E_{off}$, and $E_{rr}$, and must be entered correctly. It is assumed that the test conditions of $E_{on}$ vs. $I_c$ are the same as these of $E_{off}$ vs. $I_c$ and $E_{rr}$ vs. $I_c$, and only the values in $E_{on}$ vs. $I_c$ are used.

Parameters under *Absolute Maximum Ratings*, *Thermal Characteristics*, and *Dimensions and Weight* are not used in the loss calculation, and are optional.

In addition, the collector-emitter saturation voltage $V_{ce(sat)}$ of the transistor and the forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ of the diode change depending on the currents. The new values are used in the subsequent simulation.
4.10.2.2 IGBT Loss Calculation

An IGBT device in the database can be used in the simulation for loss calculation. An IGBT device in the Thermal Module library has the following parameters:

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific device selected from the device database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz, under which the losses are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_on}$ (turn-on)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_off}$ (turn-off)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-off. In most cases, the turn-on gate resistance $R_{g_on}$ and the turn-off gate resistance $R_{g_off}$ are identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{cond_Q}}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{cond_Q}}$ of the transistor conduction loss $P_{\text{cond_Q}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{sw_Q}}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{sw_Q}}$ of the transistor switching loss $P_{\text{sw_Q}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{cond_D}}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{cond_D}}$ of the diode conduction losses $P_{\text{cond_D}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{sw_D}}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{\text{sw_D}}$ of the diode switching losses $P_{\text{sw_D}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Parallel Devices</td>
<td>Number of identical IGBT devices in parallel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter *Frequency* refers to the frequency under which the losses are calculated. For example, if the device operates at the switching frequency of 10 kHz, and the parameter *Frequency* is also set to 10 kHz, the losses will be the values for one switching period. However, if the parameter *Frequency* is set to 60 Hz, then the losses will be the value for a period of 60 Hz.

Parameter $P_{\text{cond\_Q}}$ *Calibration Factor* is the correction factor for the transistor conduction loss. For the example, if the calculated conduction loss before the correction is $P_{\text{cond\_Q\_cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{cond\_Q}} = K_{\text{cond\_Q}} \times P_{\text{cond\_Q\_cal}}$$

Similarly, Parameter $P_{\text{sw\_Q}}$ *Calibration Factor* is the correction factor for the transistor switching loss. For the example, if the calculated switching loss before the correction is $P_{\text{sw\_Q\_cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{sw\_Q}} = K_{\text{sw\_Q}} \times P_{\text{sw\_Q\_cal}}$$

Parameters $P_{\text{cond\_D}}$ *Calibration Factor* and $P_{\text{sw\_D}}$ *Calibration Factor* work in the same way, except that they are for the diode losses.

When several identical IGBT devices are in parallel, one should have just one device in the schematic, and set the correct number of devices in the parameter input. This is because when several identical devices are in parallel in the schematic, the device currents may not be exactly equal due to small differences in the simulation. When the number of parallel devices is greater than one, the total current through the group of the parallel devices will be equally divided among the devices. The total losses are then obtained by multiplying the losses in each device by the number of parallel devices. The currents flowing out of Nodes $P_{\text{cond\_D}}$, $P_{\text{sw\_D}}$, $P_{\text{cond\_Q}}$, and $P_{\text{sw\_Q}}$ are the total losses of all the parallel devices combined.

The voltage at the conduction loss node $P_{\text{cond\_Q}}$ or the switching loss node $P_{\text{sw\_Q}}$ represents the calculated junction temperature $T_{j\_Q}$ of the transistor, and the voltage at the conduction loss node $P_{\text{cond\_D}}$ or the switching loss node $P_{\text{sw\_D}}$ represents the calculated junction temperature $T_{j\_D}$ of the anti-parallel diode, as shown below.
The calculated junction temperatures $T_{j,Q}$ and $T_{j,D}$ are used when the database curves are used for loss calculation. If the calculated junction temperature is between the junction temperatures of two curves, interpolation will be used. If the calculated junction temperature is lower than the lowest junction temperature or higher than the highest junction temperature in the curves, the curve corresponding to the lowest or highest junction temperature will be used. If there is only one curve, that curve is used regardless of the calculated junction temperature.

**Conduction Loss:**

The transistor conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{cond}_Q} = V_{\text{ce(sat)}} \times I_c$$

where $V_{\text{ce(sat)}}$ is the transistor collector-emitter saturation voltage, and $I_c$ is the collector current. When the transistor is conducting periodically with an on duty cycle of $D$, the conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{cond}_Q} = V_{\text{ce(sat)}} \times I_c \times D$$

**Switching Loss:**

The transistor turn-on loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{sw}_Q,\text{on}} = E_{\text{on}} \times f \times \frac{V_{\text{cc}}}{V_{\text{cc,datasheet}}}$$

where $E_{\text{on}}$ is the transistor turn-on energy loss, $f$ is the frequency as defined in the input parameter Frequency, $V_{\text{cc}}$ is the actual dc bus voltage, and $V_{\text{cc,datasheet}}$ is the dc bus voltage in the $E_{\text{on}}$ and $E_{\text{off}}$ characteristics of the datasheet, defined as "DC bus voltage (V)" in the test conditions.

The transistor turn-off loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{sw}_Q,\text{off}} = E_{\text{off}} \times f \times \frac{V_{\text{cc}}}{V_{\text{cc,datasheet}}}$$

where $E_{\text{off}}$ is the transistor turn-off energy loss.

To calculate $E_{\text{on}}$, the collector current $I_c$ and the junction temperature $T_j$ are used to obtain $E_{\text{on}}$ from the $E_{\text{on}}$ vs. $I_c$ curve. This value is then scaled based on the $E_{\text{on}}$ vs. RG curve and the actual gate resistance $R_{g,\text{on}}$. The losses $E_{\text{off}}$ and $E_{rr}$ are calculated in a similar way.

The loss calculation for the anti-parallel diode or free-wheeling diode is the same as described in the section for the diode device.

The losses $P_{\text{cond}_Q}$, $P_{\text{sw}_Q}$, $P_{\text{cond}_D}$, and $P_{\text{sw}_D}$, in watts, are represented in the form of currents which flow out of these nodes. Therefore, to measure and display the losses, an ammeter should be connected between the nodes and the ground. When they are not used, these nodes cannot be floating and must be connected to ground.
4.10.3 RB-IGBT Thermal Model

4.10.3.1 RB-IGBT Device in Database

A reverse-blocking IGBT (RB-IGBT) device has two types of packages: discrete or dual.

The following information is defined for an IGBT device in the database:

**General Information:**
- Manufacturer: Device manufacture
- Part Number: Manufacturer’s part number
- Package: It can be discrete or dual, as shown in the figure below

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discrete</th>
<th>Dual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Discrete Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Dual Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, beside the IGBT terminal nodes, there are two extra nodes. They are the nodes for transistor conductor loss $P_{\text{cond}_Q}$ (the node with a circle), and transistor switching loss $P_{\text{sw}_Q}$.

The style of the package can be specified in the *Style* field.

**Absolute Maximum Ratings:**
- $V_{\text{ce,max}}$ (V): Maximum collector-emitter voltage
- $I_{c,\text{max}}$ (A): Maximum collector current
- $T_{j,\text{max}}$ (°C): Maximum junction temperature

**Electrical Characteristics - Transistor:**
- $V_{\text{ce(sat)}}$ vs. $I_c$: Collector-emitter saturation voltage $V_{\text{ce(sat)}}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{\text{on}}$ vs. $I_c$: Turn-on energy loss $E_{\text{on}}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{\text{off}}$ vs. $I_c$: Turn-off energy loss $E_{\text{off}}$ vs. collector current $I_c$
- $E_{\text{rr}}$ vs. $I_c$: Reverse recovery energy loss $E_{\text{rr}}$ vs. collector current $I_c$

**Thermal Characteristics:**
- $R_{\text{th(j-c)}}$ (transistor): Transistor junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- $R_{\text{th(c-s)}}$: Case-to-sink thermal resistance, in °C/W

**Dimensions and Weight:**
- Length (mm): Length of the device, in mm
- Width (mm): Width of the device, in mm
- Height (mm): Height of the device, in mm
- Weight (g): Weight of the device, in g

Note that the condition "DC bus voltage (V)" in the characteristics $E_{\text{on}}$ vs. $I_c$ and $E_{\text{off}}$ vs. $I_c$ for transistors, and the condition "Reverse blocking voltage VR (V)" in the characteristics $E_{\text{rr}}$ vs. $I_c$ are used to scale the loss calculation, and must be entered correctly.

Also, parameters under *Absolute Maximum Ratings*, *Thermal Characteristics*, and *Dimensions and Weight* are not used in the loss calculation, and are optional.

In addition, the collector-emitter saturation voltage $V_{\text{ce(sat)}}$ of the transistor depending on the currents. The new values are used in the subsequent simulation.
### 4.10.3.2 RB-IGBT Loss Calculation

A RB-IGBT device in the database can be selected and used in the simulation for loss calculation. A RB-IGBT device in the Thermal Module library has the following parameters:

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific device selected from the device database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz, under which the losses are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_on}$ (turn-on)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_off}$ (turn-off)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-off. In most cases, the turn-on gate resistance $R_{g_on}$ and the turn-off gate resistance $R_{g_off}$ are identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{cond_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{cond_Q}$ of the transistor conduction losses $P_{cond_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{sw_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{sw_Q}$ of the transistor switching losses $P_{sw_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Parallel Devices</td>
<td>Number of identical RB-IGBT devices in parallel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter *Frequency* refers to the frequency under which the losses are calculated. For example, if the device operates at the switching frequency of 10 kHz, and *Frequency* is also set to 10 kHz, the losses will be the values for one switching period. However, if *Frequency* is set to 60 Hz, then the losses will be the value for a period of 60 Hz.

Parameter $P_{cond\_Q}$ *Calibration Factor* is the correction factor for the transistor conduction loss. For the example, if the calculated conduction loss before the correction is $P_{cond\_Q\_cal}$, then

$$P_{cond\_Q} = K_{cond\_Q} \times P_{cond\_Q\_cal}$$

Similarly, Parameter $P_{sw\_Q}$ *Calibration Factor* is the correction factor for the transistor switching loss. For the example, if the calculated switching loss before the correction is $P_{sw\_Q\_cal}$, then

$$P_{sw\_Q} = K_{sw\_Q} \times P_{sw\_Q\_cal}$$

When several identical RB-IGBT devices are in parallel, one should have just one device in the schematic, and set the correct number of devices in the parameter input. This is because when several identical devices are in parallel in the schematic, the device currents may not be exactly equal due to small differences in the simulation. When the number of parallel devices is greater than one, the total current through the group of the parallel devices will be equally divided among the devices. The total losses are then obtained by multiplying the losses in each device by the number of parallel devices. The currents flowing out of Nodes $P_{cond\_Q}$ and $P_{sw\_Q}$ are the total losses of all the parallel devices combined.

The voltage at the conduction losses node $P_{cond\_Q}$ or the switching losses node $P_{sw\_Q}$ represents the calculated junction temperature $T_{j\_Q}$ of the transistor.

The calculated junction temperature $T_{j\_Q}$ is used when the database curves are used for loss calculation. If the calculated junction temperature is between the junction temperatures of two curves, interpolation will be used. If the calculated junction temperature is lower than the lowest junction temperature or higher than the highest junction temperature in the curves, the curve corresponding to the lowest or highest junction temperature will be used. If there is only one curve, that curve is used regardless of the calculated junction temperature.

### Conduction Loss:

The transistor conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{cond\_Q} = V_{ce(sat)} \times I_c$$

where $V_{ce(sat)}$ is the transistor collector-emitter saturation voltage, and $I_c$ is the collector current. When the transistor is conducting periodically with an on duty cycle of $D$, the conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{cond\_Q} = V_{ce(sat)} \times I_c \times D$$
Switching Loss:

The transistor turn-on loss is calculated as:

$$P_{sw,Q_{on}} = E_{on} \times f \times \frac{V_{cc}}{V_{cc_{datasheet}}}$$

where $E_{on}$ is the device turn-on energy loss, $f$ is the frequency as defined in the input parameter Frequency, $V_{cc}$ is the actual dc bus voltage, and $V_{cc_{datasheet}}$ is the dc bus voltage in the $E_{on}$ and $E_{off}$ characteristics of the datasheet, defined as "DC bus voltage (V)" in the test conditions.

The transistor turn-off loss is calculated as:

$$P_{sw,Q_{off}} = (E_{off} + E_{rr}) \times f \times \frac{V_{cc}}{V_{cc_{datasheet}}}$$

where $E_{off}$ is the transistor turn-off energy loss and $E_{rr}$ is the reverse recovery energy loss.

To calculate $E_{on}$, the collector current $I_c$ and the junction temperature $T_j$ are used to obtain $E_{on}$ from the $E_{on}$ vs. $I_c$ curve. This value is then scaled based on the $E_{on}$ vs. $RG$ curve and the actual gate resistance $R_{g_{on}}$. The losses $E_{off}$ and $E_{rr}$ are calculated in a similar way.

The losses $P_{cond,Q}$ and $P_{sw,Q}$, in watts, are represented in the form of currents which flow out of these nodes. Therefore, to measure and display the losses, an ammeter should be connected between the nodes and the ground. When they are not used, these nodes cannot be floating and must be connected to ground.

4.10.4 MOSFET Thermal Model

There are two types of devices for MOSFET loss calculation. One is "MOSFET (database)", and another is "MOSFET (Eon) (database)". "MOSFET (database)" is used where switching turn-on/turn-off energy losses $E_{on}$ and $E_{off}$ are not provided in the manufacturer datasheet, and "MOSFET (Eon) (database)" is used where switching turn-on/turn-off energy losses $E_{on}$ and $E_{off}$ are provided.

The device "MOSFET (Eon) (database)" can also be used for loss calculation for SiC MOSFET and GaN devices.

4.10.4.1 "MOSFET (database)" Device in Database

The following information is defined for a "MOSFET (database)" device in the database:

**General Information:**
- Manufacturer: Device manufacture
- Part Number: Manufacturer’s part number
- Package: Discrete, dual, or 6-pack, as shown in the figure below:

**Images:**

In the images, beside the MOSFET and diode terminal nodes, there are four extra nodes from the top to the bottom (or from the left to the right on the top for the 6-pack package). They are the node for transistor conductor losses $P_{cond,Q}$ (the node with a circle), for transistor switching losses $P_{sw,Q}$ for diode conductor losses $P_{cond,D}$ (the node with a square), and for diode switching losses $P_{sw,D}$, respectively.
The style of the package (for example, TO-220, TO-262, TO-247, etc.) can be specified in the Style field.

**Absolute Maximum Ratings:**
- $V_{DS,\text{max}}$ (V): Maximum drain-to-source voltage
- $I_{D,\text{max}}$ (A): Maximum continuous drain current
- $T_{j,\text{max}}$ (°C): Maximum junction temperature

**Electrical Characteristics - Transistor:**
- $R_{DS(\text{on})}$ (ohm): Drain-to-source on-resistance $R_{DS(on)}$ at the test conditions (test conditions: junction temperature $T_{j,b}$ in °C (usually 25 °C), gate-to-source voltage $V_{GS}$ in V, and drain current $I_D$ in A).
- Temperature Coefficient: Temperature coefficient $K_T$ of the on-resistance, in 1/°C
- $V_{GS(th)}$ (V): Gate threshold voltage $V_{GS(th)}$ (test condition: drain current $I_D$ in A).
- $g_{fs}$ (S): Forward transconductance $g_{fs}$. In the linear region of the device, we have
  $$g_{fs} = \frac{I_D}{V_{GS} - V_{GS(th)}}$$
  (test conditions: drain-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V, and drain current $I_D$ in A).
- $t_r$ (ns) and $t_f$ (ns): Rise time $t_r$ and fall time $t_f$ (test conditions: drain-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V; drain current $I_D$ in A; and gate resistance $R_g$ in ohm).
- $Q_g$, $Q_{gs}$, and $Q_{gd}$: Total gate charge $Q_g$, gate-to-source charge $Q_{gs}$, and gate-to-drain ("Miller") charge $Q_{gd}$, respectively, all in nC (test conditions: drain-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V; gate-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V; and drain current $I_D$ in A).
- $C_{iss}$, $C_{oss}$, and $C_{rss}$: Input capacitance $C_{iss}$, output capacitance $C_{oss}$, and reverse transfer capacitance $C_{rss}$, respectively, all in pF (test conditions: drain-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V; gate-to-source voltage $V_{DS}$ in V; and test frequency in MHz).

**Electrical Characteristics - Diode:**
- $V_d$ vs. $I_F$: Forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ vs. forward current $I_F$.
- $t_{rr}$ and $Q_{rr}$: Reverse recovery time $t_{rr}$ in ns, and reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$ in uC (test conditions: forward current $I_F$ in A; rate of change of the current $di/dt$ in A/us, and junction temperature $T_j$ in °C).

**Thermal Characteristics:**
- $R_{\text{th(j-c)}}$: Junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- $R_{\text{th(c-s)}}$: Case-to-sink thermal resistance, in °C/W

**Dimensions and Weight:**
- Length (mm): Length of the device, in mm
- Width (mm): Width of the device, in mm
- Height (mm): Height of the device, in mm
- Weight (g): Weight of the device, in g

Note that parameters under Absolute Maximum Ratings, Thermal Characteristics, and Dimensions and Weight, and the rise time $t_r$ and fall time $t_f$ parameters, are not used in the loss calculation, and are optional.

The MOSFET on-resistance is a function of the transistor junction temperature. The voltage at the node $P_{cond,Q}$ or $P_{sw,Q}$ of the MOSFET image represents the calculated transistor junction temperature $T_j$ in °C. For example, a voltage value of 25V would mean a junction temperature of 25°C. The on-resistance of the MOSFET is expressed as:

$$R_{(DS)on} = R_{(DS)on\_b} \cdot (1 + K_T \cdot (T_j - T_{j,b}))$$

The temperature coefficient is calculated as:
The base values are normally obtained at the test conditions of 25°C. Using the normalized value of $R_{DS(on)}$ based on the base value, we have:

$$K_T = \frac{R_{DS(on)}_{normalized} - 1}{T_j - T_{j,b}}$$

The on-resistance $R_{DS(on)}$ is calculated at every time step and is used in the simulation.

Also, the forward conduction voltage drop $V_d$ of the diode changes depending on the current. The new conduction voltage value is used in the simulation.

### 4.10.4.2 "MOSFET (Eon) (database)" Device in Database

The following information is defined for a "MOSFET (Eon) (database)" device in the database:

**General Information:**
- **Manufacturer:** Device manufacture
- **Part Number:** Manufacturer’s part number
- **Package:** Discrete, dual, or 6-pack, as shown in the figure below:

**Images:**

In the images, beside the MOSFET and diode terminal nodes, there are four extra nodes from the top to the bottom (or from the left to the right on the top for the 6-pack package). They are the node for transistor conductor losses $P_{cond,Q}$ (the node with a circle), for transistor switching losses $P_{sw,Q}$, for diode conductor losses $P_{cond,D}$ (the node with a square), and for diode switching losses $P_{sw,D}$, respectively.

The style of the package (for example, TO-220, TO-262, TO-247, etc.) can be specified in the *Style* field.

**Absolute Maximum Ratings:**
- $V_{DS,max}$ (V): Maximum drain-to-source voltage
- $I_{DS,max}$ (A): Maximum continuous drain current
- $T_{j,max}$ (°C): Maximum junction temperature

**Electrical Characteristics - Transistor:**
- $V_{DS}$ vs. $I_{DS}$: Drain-source voltage $V_{DS}$ vs. drain current $I_{DS}$ in the 1st quadrant
- $V_{DS}$ vs. $I_{DS}$ (3rd): Drain-source voltage $V_{DS}$ vs. drain current $I_{DS}$ in the 3rd quadrant
- $E_{on}$ vs. $I_{DS}$: Turn-on energy loss $E_{on}$ vs. drain current $I_{DS}$
- $E_{off}$ vs. $I_{DS}$: Turn-off energy loss $E_{off}$ vs. drain current $I_{DS}$
- $E_{on}$ vs. $RG$: Turn-on energy loss $E_{on}$ vs. gate resistance $R_G$
- $E_{off}$ vs. $RG$: Turn-off energy loss $E_{off}$ vs. gate resistance $R_G$
E_{on} vs. V_{DS} @ I_{DS1}: Turn-on energy loss \( E_{on} \) vs. voltage \( V_{DS} \) at one current value \( I_{DS} \)
E_{off} vs. V_{DS} @ I_{DS1}: Turn-off energy loss \( E_{off} \) vs. voltage \( V_{DS} \) at one current value \( I_{DS} \)
E_{on} vs. V_{DS} @ I_{DS2}: Turn-on energy loss \( E_{on} \) vs. voltage \( V_{DS} \) at another current value \( I_{DS1} \)
E_{off} vs. V_{DS} @ I_{DS2}: Turn-off energy loss \( E_{off} \) vs. voltage \( V_{DS} \) at another current value \( I_{DS2} \)

**Electrical Characteristics - Diode:**
- \( V_d \) vs. \( I_F \): Forward conduction voltage drop \( V_d \) vs. forward current \( I_F \)
- \( t_{rr} \) vs. \( I_F \): Reverse recovery time \( t_{rr} \) vs. current \( I_F \)
- \( I_{rr} \) vs. \( I_F \): Peak reverse recovery current \( I_{rr} \) vs. current \( I_F \)
- \( Q_{rr} \) vs. \( I_F \): Reverse recovery charge \( Q_{rr} \) vs. current \( I_F \)
- \( E_{rr} \) vs. \( I_F \): Reverse recovery energy loss \( E_{rr} \) vs. current \( I_F \)
- \( E_{rr} \) vs. \( R_G \): Reverse recovery energy loss \( E_{rr} \) vs. gate resistance \( R_G \)

**Thermal Characteristics:**
- \( R_{th(j-c)} \): Junction-to-case thermal resistance, in °C/W
- \( R_{th(c-s)} \): Case-to-sink thermal resistance, in °C/W

**Dimensions and Weight:**
- Length (mm): Length of the device, in mm
- Width (mm): Width of the device, in mm
- Height (mm): Height of the device, in mm
- Weight (g): Weight of the device, in g

Note that the following parameters from the "Other Test Conditions" of the following curves are used in the loss calculation, and must be entered correctly:
- Voltage \( V_{DS} \): In \( E_{on} \) vs. \( I_{DS} \)
- Gate resistance: In \( E_{on} \) vs. \( I_{DS} \) and \( E_{on} \) vs. \( V_{DS} \)
- Current \( I_{DS} \): In \( E_{on} \) vs. \( R_G \) and \( E_{on} \) vs. \( V_{DS} \)
- Reverse blocking voltage \( V_R \): In \( t_{rr}/I_{rr}/Q_{rr} \) vs. \( I_F \)

Parameters under *Absolute Maximum Ratings, Thermal Characteristics, and Dimensions and Weight* are not used in the loss calculation, and are optional.
4.10.4.3 MOSFET Loss Calculation

A MOSFET device in the database can be selected and used in the simulation for loss calculation. A MOSFET in the Thermal Module library has the following parameters:

**Attributes for Device "MOSFET (database)":**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific device selected from the device database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz, under which the losses are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{GG+}$ (upper level)</td>
<td>Upper level of the gate source voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{GG-}$ (lower level)</td>
<td>Lower level of the gate source voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_on}$ (turn-on)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_off}$ (turn-off)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-off. In most cases, the turn-on gate resistance $R_{g_on}$ and the turn-off gate resistance $R_{g_off}$ are identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{DS(on)}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>The calibration factor of the on-state resistance $R_{DS(on)}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$g_{fs}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor of the forward transconductance $g_{fs}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{cond_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{cond_Q}$ of the transistor conduction losses $P_{cond_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{sw_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{sw_Q}$ of the transistor switching losses $P_{sw_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{cond_D}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{cond_D}$ of the diode conduction losses $P_{cond_D}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{sw_D}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>Calibration factor $K_{sw_D}$ of the diode switching losses $P_{sw_D}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Parallel Devices</td>
<td>Number of identical devices in parallel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes for Device "MOSFET (Eon) (database)":**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific device selected from the device database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz, under which the losses are calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_on}$ (turn-on)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{g_off}$ (turn-off)</td>
<td>Gate resistance during turn-off. In most cases, the turn-on gate resistance $R_{g_on}$ and the turn-off gate resistance $R_{g_off}$ are identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{cond_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>The calibration factor $K_{cond_Q}$ of the transistor conduction losses $P_{cond_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{sw_Q}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>The calibration factor $K_{sw_Q}$ of the transistor switching losses $P_{sw_Q}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{cond_D}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>The calibration factor $K_{cond_D}$ of the diode conduction losses $P_{cond_D}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{sw_D}$ Calibration Factor</td>
<td>The calibration factor $K_{sw_D}$ of the diode switching losses $P_{sw_D}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Parallel Devices</td>
<td>Number of identical devices in parallel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter *Frequency* refers to the frequency under which the losses are calculated. For example, if the device operates at the switching frequency of 10 kHz, and *Frequency* is also set to 10 kHz, the losses will be the values for one switching period. However, if *Frequency* is set to 60 Hz, then the losses will be the value for a period of 60 Hz.

Parameter $P_{cond\_Q}$ *Calibration Factor* is the correction factor for the transistor conduction loss. For the
example, if the calculated conduction loss before the correction is $P_{\text{cond,Q,cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{cond,Q}} = K_{\text{cond,Q}} \times P_{\text{cond,Q,cal}}$$

Similarly, Parameter $P_{\text{sw,Q Calibration Factor}}$ is the correction factor for the transistor switching loss. For the example, if the calculated switching loss before the correction is $P_{\text{sw,Q,cal}}$, then

$$P_{\text{sw,Q}} = K_{\text{sw,Q}} \times P_{\text{sw,Q,cal}}$$

Parameters $P_{\text{cond,D Calibration Factor}}$ and $P_{\text{sw,D Calibration Factor}}$ work in the same way, except that they are for the diode losses.

When several identical MOSFET devices are in parallel, one should have just one device in the schematic, and set the correct number of devices in the parameter input. This is because when several identical devices are in parallel in the schematic, the device currents may not be exactly equal due to small differences in the simulation. When the number of parallel devices is greater than one, the total current through the group of the parallel devices will be equally divided among the devices. The total losses are then obtained by multiplying the losses in each device by the number of parallel devices. The currents flowing out of Nodes $P_{\text{cond,D}}$, $P_{\text{sw,D}}$, $P_{\text{cond,Q}}$, and $P_{\text{sw,Q}}$ are the total losses of all the parallel devices combined.

The voltage at the diode loss node $P_{\text{cond,D}}$ or $P_{\text{sw,D}}$ of the MOSFET image represents the calculated junction temperature $T_j$ of the anti-parallel diode, and this junction temperature is used when the database curves are used for determining the forward conduction diode voltage drop. If the calculated $T_j$ is between the junction temperatures of two curves, interpolation will be used. If the calculated $T_j$ is lower than the lowest $T_j$ or higher than the highest $T_j$ in the curves, the curve corresponding to the lowest or highest $T_j$ will be used. If there is only one curve, that curve is used regardless of the calculated $T_j$.

**Conduction Losses:**

The transistor conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{cond,Q}} = I_D^2 \times R_{\text{DS(on)}}$$

where $I_D$ is the drain current, and $R_{\text{DS(on)}}$ is the static on-resistance. When the transistor is conducting periodically with an on duty cycle of $D$, the conduction loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{cond,Q}} = I_D^2 \times R_{\text{DS(on)}} \times D$$

**Switching Losses:**

The transistor turn-on loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{sw,Q,on}} = E_{\text{on}} \times f$$

where $E_{\text{on}}$ is the transistor turn-on energy loss, and $f$ is the frequency as defined in the input parameter Frequency.

The transistor turn-off loss is calculated as:

$$P_{\text{sw,Q,off}} = E_{\text{off}} \times f$$

where $E_{\text{off}}$ is the transistor turn-off energy loss.

The energy losses $E_{\text{on}}$ and $E_{\text{off}}$ are either read directly from the device database, or if they are not available, are calculated using the rise times and the fall times of the voltage and current waveforms based on the information of the MOSFET gate current, input/output/reverse transfer capacitances, and gate charges.

For "MOSFET (Eon)(database)" devices, to calculate the turn-on energy loss $E_{\text{on}}$, the collector current $I_D$ and the junction temperature $T_j$ are used to obtain $E_{\text{on}}$ from the Eon vs. IDS curve. This value is then scaled based on the Eon vs. RG curve and the actual gate resistance $R_{\text{g,on}}$. If the Eon vs. VDS curves exist, the value is further scaled based on these curves and the actual voltage $V_{\text{DS}}$. If these curves do not exist, $E_{\text{on}}$ will be scaled based on $V_{\text{DS}} / V_{\text{DS datasheet}}$, where $V_{\text{DS datasheet}}$ is the drain-source voltage from the test conditions of the Eon vs. IDS curve.

The turn-off energy loss $E_{\text{off}}$ is calculated in a similar way.
Please note that the gate charge loss is not included in the switching losses above. The gate charge loss is usually quite small compared to the turn-on/turn-off switching losses, and can be neglected in the full load conditions. However, it can become substantial in the light load conditions. To calculate the gate charge loss \( P_{\text{loss, } Q_g} \):

\[
P_{\text{loss, } Q_g} = Q_g \cdot V_{GG} \cdot f_{sw}
\]

where \( Q_g \) is the total gate charge, \( V_{GG} \) is the gate source voltage, and \( f_{sw} \) is the switching frequency.

Also, for the "MOSFET (database)" device, the MOSFET device must be properly selected to ensure that it is sufficiently rated to conduct the current. If the MOSFET current rating is too low, PSIM will not be able to calculate the switching rise/fall times and will give an error message. In simulation, the maximum drain-to-source current that a MOSFET device is allowed to conduct is:

\[
I_{o, \text{max}} = g_{fs} \cdot (V_{GG} - V_{GS(\text{th})})
\]

If the current exceeds \( I_{o, \text{max}} \), one should either increase the gate source voltage level or select another MOSFET device with a larger forward transconductance value.

The loss calculation for the anti-parallel diode or free-wheeling diode is the same as described in the diode device section.

The losses \( P_{\text{cond, } Q}, P_{\text{sw, } Q}, P_{\text{cond, } D}, \) and \( P_{\text{sw, } D} \), in watts, are represented in the form of currents which flow out of these nodes. Therefore, to measure and display the losses, an ammeter should be connected between the nodes and the ground. When they are not used, these nodes cannot be floating and must be connected to ground.
4.10.5 Inductor Thermal Model

4.10.5.1 Inductor in Database

The following information is defined for an inductor in the database:

**General Information:**
- Manufacturer: Inductor manufacture
- Part Number: Inductor manufacturer’s part number
- Package: Only the basic package is available.

**Image:**

```
| P_{\text{core}} | P_{\text{winding}} |
```

**Electrical Characteristics:**
- L (uH): Inductance, in uH

**Maximum Ratings:**
- Imax,rms (A): Maximum rms current rating, in A.

**Core Information:**
- Core Type and Size: Specify core shape and size
- Core Material: Specify core material and magnetic characteristics

**Winding Information:**
- Winding Type and Size: Specify conductor shape, size, and insulation type
- Winding Distribution: Specify winding number of turns, layers, distance between layers, distance between wires, and distance between core and winding
- Distribution of Parallel Wires: Specify parallel wire distribution in radial and height directions

**Gap Information:**
- Gap Data: Specify the number of gaps and the length of each gap.

A new inductor can be added to the database by selecting **Device >> New Inductor**. Databases of core materials, cores, and winding can be added and edited by selecting **Device >> Edit Inductor Core Database**, **Edit Winding Database**, and **Edit Core Material Database**.

4.10.5.2 Inductor Loss Calculation

A database inductor can be selected and used in the simulation for loss calculation. An inductor in the Thermal Module library has the following parameters:

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td>The specific inductor selected from the device database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Fundamental frequency of the inductor, in Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Flag</td>
<td>Flag for core temperature definition. It can be either Calculated or Fixed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If it is Calculated, the core temperature will be calculated based on circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>operating conditions and this temperature will be used for loss calculation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If it is Fixed, the core temperature will be specified by users. This will give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>users a clear idea the losses at a specific temperature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambient Temperature</td>
<td>Ambient temperature of the inductor, in °C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convection</td>
<td>Type of cooling. It can be Forced for forced convection or Natural for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>natural convection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The losses $P_{\text{core}}$ and $P_{\text{winding}}$, in watts, are represented in the form of currents which flow out of the nodes. To measure and display the losses, an ammeter should be connected between the nodes and the ground. When they are not used, these nodes cannot be floating and must be connected to ground.

In the parameters, **Frequency** refers to the main frequency under which the inductor is excited. For example, if an inductor conducts a 60-Hz current in an ac circuit which also has 20kHz switching harmonic components, the frequency should be set to 60 Hz. If an inductor conducts dc current in a dc circuit which has 20kHz switching harmonic components, the frequency should be set to 20kHz.

For more information on how to use the Thermal Module inductor, please refer to the tutorial "Tutorial - Inductor loss calculation in Thermal Module.pdf".

### 4.10.6 Device Database Editor

The device database editor, PcdEditor.exe, provides an easy and convenient way of adding, editing, and managing devices.

Select **Utilities >> Device Database Editor** to launch the database editor. The interface is shown below.
On the left are the device database files that are loaded into the database editor, and the list of the devices. The devices can be displayed based on either **Device Type** or **Manufacturer**. Also, the device list can be sorted by **Part Number**, **Voltage** rating, or **Current** rating, by clicking on the title bars of the list.

To create a new device file, choose **File >> New Device File**.

To load a device files into the editor, choose **File >> Open Device File**.

To unload a device file from the editor, choose **File >> Close Device File**.

On the right is the information of each device. In general, the following information is required to define a switching device for thermal simulation:

- Manufacturer and Part Number
- Package type and style
- Absolute maximum ratings
- Electrical characteristics
- Thermal characteristics
- Dimension and weight

The following information are required to define a database inductor for thermal simulation.

- Manufacturer and Part Number
- Package type and style
- Maximum ratings
- Electrical characteristics
- Core, winding, and gap information

Five types of elements can be added to a database device file: inductor and four types of switching devices: diode, IGBT, dual IGBT-diode modules, and MOSFET.

To create a new device, go to the **Device** menu, and choose either **New Diode**, **New IGBT**, **New IGBT-Diode**, **New MOSFET**, or **New Inductor**.

To make a copy of an existing device in the same database file, highlight the device in the list, and choose **Device >> Save Device As**.

To make a copy of an existing device and save it in a different database file, first highlight the device in the list, then highlight the file name in the File Name list, and choose **Device >> Save Device As**.

---

### 4.10.7 Adding a Switching Device to Database

The step-by-step procedure is illustrated with an example: add Powerex discrete diode CS240650 (600V, 50A) into a new device database file "diode_new.dev".

- **Create new device file:** Launch PcdEditor.exe. Go to **File >> New Device File**, and create a file called "diode_new.dev". This file will be placed in the **device** sub-folder under the PSIM program folder by default.

- **Create new device:** With the file name "diode_new" highlighted in the "File Name" list, Choose **Device >> New Diode**. A diode will be added to the database file with **Manufacturer** as "New" and **Part Number** as "New".

- **Enter basic information:** Obtain the datasheet of Powerex diode CS240650 from the web site www.pwrx.com. By referring to the information from the datasheet, in the database editor, enter the following information for this device:
  
  - **Manufacturer:** Powerex
  - **Part Number:** CS240650
  - **Package:** Discrete
  
  and under **Absolute Maximum Ratings**:
  - Vrm,max (V): 600
  - IF,max (A): 50
  - Tj,max (°C): 150

- **Define forward voltage characteristics** $V_d$ vs. $I_F$: 
Under *Electrical Characteristics* by clicking on the **Edit** button on top of the $V_d \text{ vs. } I_F$ graph area. The following dialog window will appear.

The dialog window has two pages: **Graph** and **Conditions**.

The **Graph** page contains the x and y axis settings as well as the data points and the graph. In this case, the y axis is the conduction voltage drop $V_d$, and the x axis is the forward current $I_F$. The x and y axis can have multiplying factors (such as m for $10^{-3}$, u for $10^{-6}$, etc.).

The **Conditions** page contains the conditions under which the graph is obtained.

There are two ways to define the graph:

- Enter the graph data points manually if there are only a few data points
- Use the Graph Wizard to capture the graph directly from the datasheet image if the graph image is available from datasheet.

**To Define the Graph Manually:**

- On the datasheet, refer to the "Maximum On-State Characteristics", and enter the values for the x/y axis settings as follows:
  - $X_0$: 1
  - $X_{max}$: 1000
  - $Y_0$: 0.6
  - $Y_{max}$: 2.6
  - X in log: checked
- Visually inspect the graph, and select a few data points. Enter the data points in the data area as follows, then click on the **Refresh** button to display the graph.:
  
  \[(1,0.7) (10,1.05) (100,1.8) (200,2.2) (300,2.4)\]

Or if the data is in an Excel file, it can be copied directly from Excel into the data area. The figure on the left shows the data in Excel. To copy the data, select the two data columns as shown in the figure on the right, press Ctrl-C to copy. Then move the cursor into the data area, and press Ctrl-V to paste.
• Click on the Conditions tab and enter the Junction Temperature as 25 °C.

Alternatively, the graph can be defined in this case using the Graph Wizard.

**To Define the Graph Using the Graph Wizard:**

• Click on the Add Curve button. Then click on the forward wizard icon to start the Graph Wizard.
• Display the graph of the datasheet on the screen as follows, then press the Print Screen key (the key is labeled as "Prnt Scr" on some keyboards) to copy the screen image to the clipboard.

• Click on the forward wizard icon to paste the screen image into the graph window in the database editor. Position the graph image properly in the graph window by dragging the left mouse so that the complete graph is displayed within the window.
• If the graph image is either too large or too small, go back to the previous step by clicking on the backward wizard icon. Then resize the image of the graph in the Adobe Acrobat, and copy the screen image to the clipboard again.
• The graph dialog window should look something like follows. Click on the forward wizard icon to move on to the next step.
In this step, the border of the graph area is defined by first left clicking at the origin of the graph (usually the lower left corner), then left clicking again at the opposite corner of the origin (usually the upper right corner). Note that the graph origin does not have to be the lower left corner, and it can be any one of the four corners.

To locate the origin of the corner more accurately, right mouse click to zoom in, and press the Esc (escape) key to exit the zoom. After this, a blue rectangle will appear around the border of the graph, and the dialog window will appear as follows.

Then click on the forward wizard icon to move on to the next step.

In this step, the x and y axis settings will be defined. Enter the settings as follows:
X0: 1  
Xmax: 1000  
Y0: 0.6  
Ymax: 2.6  
X in log: checked

- Leave the checkbox Invert graph unchecked since the diode forward current $I_F$ is in the x-axis in this case. But in other situations, if the current is in y-axis, check the Invert graph checkbox.

- Enter the junction temperature as 25 °C. Click on the forward wizard icon to move on to the next step.

- Left click on top of the graph to capture the data points. In this case, for example, four data points at the current values of around 1A, 10A, 100A, and 280A are captured. Again, right click to zoom in. You can capture as many data points as desired.

- As data points are captured, red lines will appear that will connect the data points.

- Then click on the forward wizard icon to complete the data capture process. The final graph dialog window should appear as follows.

![Graph Image]

- To see the x and y axis values of a particular data point on the graph, place the cursor inside the graph area. The cursor image will change to a cross image, and the x and y coordinates of the cursor will be displayed at the upper right corner of the dialog window. Place the cursor on top of the curve to read the x and y axis readings.

- If there are multiple curves for different junction temperatures, repeat the same process and enter the junction temperature value for each curve accordingly. Use the drop-down menu at the upper right corner of the dialog window to show one particular curve, or to show all the curves at the same time.

- With the same process, define the reverse recovery characteristics $t_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$, $I_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$, and $Q_{rr}$ vs. $I_F$.

- Enter the Thermal Characteristics as:
  
  \[
  R_{th(j-c)} = 0.6 \\
  R_{th(c-s)} = 0.4
  \]

- Enter the Dimension and Weight as:
  
  Length (mm): 53  
  Width (mm): 36  
  Height (mm): 29

- Choose Device >> Save Device to save the device information. This completes the process of adding the diode into the database.
4.11 Renewable Energy Module

Renewable Energy Module library contains the following elements:
- Solar modules: physical model, functional model, cSi model, and thin-film model;
- Wind turbine
- Lithium-ion and other battery models
- Ultracapacitor

4.11.1 Solar Modules

4.11.1.1 Solar Module - Functional Model

Functional model represents the solar module based on $i$-$v$ characteristics. Functional model of solar module is easy to use because it requires only four parameters which can be obtained on any manufacturer’s datasheet.

**Image:**

In the image, the nodes marked with the "+" and "-" signs are the positive and negative terminals. The node on the top is theoretical maximum power (in W) given the operating conditions.

While the positive and negative terminal nodes are power circuit nodes, the other nodes are all control circuit nodes.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Circuit Voltage $V_{oc}$</td>
<td>Voltage measured when solar cell terminals are open circuit, in V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Circuit Current $I_{sc}$</td>
<td>Current measured when the solar cell terminals are short circuited, in A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Power Voltage $V_{m}$</td>
<td>Solar cell terminal voltage when the output power is at the maximum, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Power Current $I_{m}$</td>
<td>Solar cell terminal current when the output power is at the maximum, in A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the four input parameters, the functional model will create the $i$-$v$ curve of the solar cell. The figure below shows the $i$-$v$ and $p$-$v$ curves of a typical solar cell.

**Image:**

The curves show that the solar cell output power reaches the maximum at a specific voltage level. Many control
schemes have been proposed in the literature to track this maximum power point (so called Maximum Power Point Tracking, or MPPT) so that the solar cell output power is at the maximum.

### 4.11.1.2 Solar Module - Physical Model

The physical model of solar module simulates the behavior of the solar module with more accuracy because it takes into account the light intensity and temperature variation.

**Image:**

In the image, The nodes with the "+" and "-" signs are the positive and negative terminals. The node with the letter "S" refers to the light intensity input (in W/m²), and The node with the letter "T" refers to the ambient temperature input (in °C). The node on the top is theoretical power (in W) given the operating conditions.

While the positive and negative terminal nodes are power circuit nodes, the other nodes are all control circuit nodes.

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells Ns</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_s$ of the solar module. A solar module consists of $N_s$ solar cells in series.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard Light Intensity S₀</td>
<td>Light intensity $S_0$ under the standard test conditions, in W/m². The value is normally 1000 W/m² in manufacturer datasheet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ref. Temperature $T_{ref}$</td>
<td>Temperature $T_{ref}$ under the standard test conditions, in °C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Resistance $R_s$</td>
<td>Series resistance $R_s$ of each solar cell, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shunt Resistance $R_{sh}$</td>
<td>Shunt resistance $R_{sh}$ of each solar cell, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Circuit Current $I_{sc0}$</td>
<td>Short circuit current $I_{sc0}$ of each solar cell at the reference temperature $T_{ref}$, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturation Current $I_{s0}$</td>
<td>Diode saturation current $I_{s0}$ of each solar cell at the reference temperature $T_{ref}$, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Band Energy $E_g$</td>
<td>Band energy of each solar cell, in eV. It is around 1.12 for crystalline silicon, and around 1.75 for amorphous silicon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideality Factor $A$</td>
<td>Ideality factor $A$ of each solar cell, also called emission coefficient. It is around 2 for crystalline silicon, and is less than 2 for amorphous silicon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature Coefficient $C_t$</td>
<td>Temperature coefficient $C_t$, in A/°C or A/°K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient $K_s$</td>
<td>Coefficient $k_s$ that defines how light intensity affects the solar cell temperature.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A solar module consists of $N_s$ solar cells in series, and the equivalent circuit of the physical model of one solar
The equations that describe a solar cell are:

\[ i = i_{ph} - i_d - i_r \]

and

\[ i_{ph} = I_{sc0} \cdot \frac{S}{S_0} + C_i \cdot (T - T_{ref}) \]

\[ i_d = I_0 \cdot \left( e^{\frac{qE_d}{AKT}} - 1 \right) \]

\[ I_0 = I_{so} \cdot \left( \frac{T}{T_{ref}} \right)^{3} \cdot e^{\frac{qE_g}{AKT}} \]

\[ i_r = \frac{v_d}{R_{sh}} \]

\[ v_d = \frac{v}{N_{S}} + i \cdot R_s \]

\[ T = T_a + k_i \cdot S \]

where \( q \) is the electron charge \((q = 1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C})\); \( k \) is the Boltzmann constant \((k = 1.3806505 \times 10^{-23})\); \( S \) is the light intensity input; \( T_a \) is the ambient temperature input; \( v \) is the voltage across the entire solar module; and \( i \) is the current flowing out of the positive terminal of the solar module.

Some of the parameters of the physical model can be obtained from manufacturer datasheet, and the rest of the parameters can be obtained by trial-and-error. A utility tool Solar Module (physical model) under the Utilities
menu is provided to help obtaining the parameters from manufacturer datasheet. The interface of the tool is shown on the right.

For more details on how to use this tool to obtain the model parameters, please refer to the tutorial "Tutorial - Solar Module (physical module).pdf" in the "doc" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.

4.11.1.3 Solar Module - cSi and Thin-File Models

The solar module’s cSi (Crystalline Silicon) and Thin-Film models are developed according to EN50530 Standard. Only three parameters are needed. This is because material related data are already included in the v-i characteristic equations in these models.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EN50530 (cSi)</th>
<th>EN50530 (thin film)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the nodes marked with the "+" and "-" signs are the positive and negative terminals. The node with the letter "S" refers to the light intensity input (in W/m²), and The node with the letter "T" refers to the ambient temperature input (in °C).

While the positive and negative terminal nodes are power circuit nodes, the other nodes are all control circuit nodes.

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Power</td>
<td>Solar cell maximum output power, in W.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Power Voltage</td>
<td>Solar cell terminal voltage when the output power is at the maximum, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Condition Temperature</td>
<td>Test condition temperature, in degree C.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The current-voltage characteristic of cSi and thin-film models equations are:

\[ I_{pv} = I_{ph} - I_0(e^{(V_{pv} + I_{pv}R_s)/(mVr)} - 1) - (V_{pv} + I_{pv}R_s)/R_p \]

Where,

\[ I_0 = C_0T_{mod}^3 \frac{V_{pv}}{Vr} \]

and

\[ V_T = \frac{kT_{mod}}{e_0} \]

Linear temperature model for the module temperature:

\[ T_{mod} = T + \frac{c}{1000} \frac{W}{m^2} G \]

In the above equations:

- \( I_{pv} \)  Module current
- \( I_0 \)  Diode saturation current
- \( I_{ph} \)  Photo current (source current)
PV generator model for MPPT performance tests:

MPP to open circuit voltage ratio:

\[ FF_V = \frac{V_{mppSTC}}{V_{ocSTC}} \]

MPP to short circuit current ratio:

\[ FF_I = \frac{I_{mppSTC}}{I_{scSTC}} \]

Formula for the PV current as a function of PV voltage:

\[ I_{pv} = I_{sc} \left( e^{\frac{V_{pv}}{V_{ocSG}}} - 1 \right) \]

Irradiance G and temperature T dependent short circuit current:

\[ I_{sc} = I_{scSTC} \frac{G}{G_{STC}} \cdot \left[ 1 + \alpha \cdot (T_{pv} - T_{STC}) \right] \]

Irradiance and temperature dependent open circuit voltage:

\[ V_{OC} = V_{ocSTC} \cdot \left( 1 + \beta \cdot (T_{pv} - T_{STC}) \right) \cdot \left( \ln \left( \frac{G}{C}\right) + 1 \right) \cdot C_v \cdot (C_R \cdot G) \]

Where the temperature of the PV generator should follow the ambient conditions as follows:

\[ T_{pv} = T_{amb} + T_0 + \frac{k}{1 + \frac{1}{\tau} \cdot G} \]

where

\[ T_{pv} \quad \text{Computed PV generator temperature;} \]
\( T_{\text{amb}} \)  \quad \text{Ambient temperature;}

\( T_0 \)  \quad \text{Correction temperature (T0 = -30 °C);}

\( k \)  \quad \text{Irradiance gain (k = 0.03 km\(^2\)/W);}

\( \tau \)  \quad \text{Time constant ( \( \tau = 5 \text{ minutes} \);}

\( \alpha \)  \quad \text{Temperature coefficient of the current;}

\( \beta \)  \quad \text{Temperature coefficient of the voltage;}

\( C_R, C_V, C_G \)  \quad \text{Technology depending correction factor}

Irradiance dependent current \( I_0 \) is given as:

\[
I_0 = I_{\text{sc,STC}} \left[ (1 - FF_I) \left[ 1/(1 - FF_V) \right] \cdot \frac{G}{G_{\text{STC}}} \right]
\]

Constant \( C_{AQ} \) is given as:

\[
C_{AQ} = \frac{FF_V - 1}{\ln(1 - FF_I)}
\]

Voltage ratio from \( V_{\text{MPP}} \) at an irradiance of 200W/m\(^2\) to \( V_{\text{MPP}} \) at an irradiance of 1000W/m\(^2\) is given as:

\[
V_{L2H} = \frac{V_{\text{MPP}}|_{G = 200(W/m^2)}}{V_{\text{MPP}}|_{G = 1000(W/m^2)}}
\]

The parameters of the PV generator model must be set as listed in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>cSi</th>
<th>Thin-Film</th>
<th>Tolerance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( FF_V )</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>&lt; 1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( FF_I )</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>&lt; 1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_G \ [W/m^2] )</td>
<td>2.514E-03</td>
<td>1.252E-03</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_V )</td>
<td>8.593E-02</td>
<td>8.419E-02</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( C_R \ [m^2/W] )</td>
<td>1.088E-04</td>
<td>1.476E-04</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( V_{L2H} )</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>±1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \alpha )</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \beta )</td>
<td>-0.4</td>
<td>-0.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.11.2 Wind Turbine

The image and parameter of the wind turbine are described below.

**Image:**

```
Wind Turbine

Wind Speed \( \omega \) →

Pitch Angle \( \beta \) →

Wind Turbine Shaft
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Output Power</td>
<td>The maximum output power of the wind turbine, in W, at 0° pitch angle. This power is considered as the maximum power operating point of the turbine, and it should not exceed the rated power of the generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Wind Speed</td>
<td>The base wind speed that would produce the nominal output power, in m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Rotational Speed</td>
<td>The base rotational speed of the turbine that would produce the nominal output power, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Rotational Speed</td>
<td>The initial rotational speed of the turbine, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moment of Inertia</td>
<td>Moment of inertia of the wind turbine blade, in kg*m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torque Flag</td>
<td>Flag to display the internal torque of the wind turbine (0: no display; 1: display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Master/Slave Flag</td>
<td>Master/slave flag for the connected mechanical system (0: slave; 1: master)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the node with the letter "w" is for the wind speed input in m/s, and the node with the letter "p" is for the blade pitch angle input in deg. Both nodes are control circuit nodes.

The power generated by a wind turbine can be expressed as:

\[
P = \frac{1}{2} \cdot A \cdot v_{\text{wind}}^3 \cdot \rho \cdot C_p
\]

where \( A \) is the area of the rotor blade (in m²), \( v_{\text{wind}} \) is the wind speed (in m/sec.), \( \rho \) is the air density (it is approximately 1.225 kg/m³), and \( C_p \) is the power coefficient. The power coefficient \( C_p \) is a function of the tip speed ratio \( \lambda \) and the blade pitch angle \( \beta \). It can be expressed as [Heier¹]:

\[
C_p = c_1 \cdot (c_2 - c_3 \beta - c_4 \beta^2 - c_5) \cdot e^{-c_6 \beta} + c_7
\]

where \( c_1 = 0.5, c_2 = 116*\lambda', c_3 = 0.4, c_4 = 0, c_5 = 5, c_6 = 21*\lambda', c_7 = 0.01*\lambda, \) and

\[
\lambda = \frac{\omega_m \cdot R_{\text{blade}}}{v_{\text{wind}}}
\]

\[
\lambda' = \frac{1}{\lambda + 0.08\beta - \frac{0.035}{\beta^3 + 1}}
\]

where \( \omega_m \) is the rotor rotational speed (in rad/sec.) and \( R_{\text{blade}} \) is the radius of the rotor blade (in m).

---

The relationship between the power coefficient $C_p$ and the tip speed ratio $\lambda$ and the blade pitch angle $\beta$ can be plotted in the figure below.

The figure shows that the power coefficient $C_p$ reaches the maximum of 0.49 when the tip speed ratio $\lambda$ is 8.18. We choose the values of $C_p$ and $\lambda$ at the maximum as the nominal values, i.e., $C_{p,\text{nom}} = 0.49$, $\lambda_{\text{nom}} = 8.18$. One way to control the wind turbine, therefore, is to maintain the tip speed ratio at or close to the nominal value so that the power that the wind turbine generates is at the maximum.

Several examples related to wind power generation are provided in the folder "examples\Renewable Energy\Wind Power".
4.11.3 Lithium-Ion Battery Model

A lithium-ion battery model is provided. It comes with two images: one with the battery image, and the other with the battery cell symbol image.

**Images:**

![Battery Image](image)

![Battery Cell Symbol](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_s$ in series of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_p$ in parallel of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Derating Factor</td>
<td>Voltage derating factor $K_s$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Derating Factor</td>
<td>Capacity derating factor $K_p$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated Voltage</td>
<td>Rated voltage $E_{rated}$ of the battery cell, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Cut-off Voltage</td>
<td>Battery voltage $E_{cut}$ corresponding to the maximum capacity, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated Capacity</td>
<td>Rated capacity $Q_{rated}$ of the battery cell, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Resistance</td>
<td>Internal resistance $R_{battery}$ of the battery cell, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Current</td>
<td>Discharge current of the curve under which model parameters are obtained, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Factor</td>
<td>Capacity factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Voltage</td>
<td>Full (or maximum) voltage $E_{full}$ of the battery cell, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exponential Point Voltage</td>
<td>Battery voltage $E_{top}$ at the end of the exponential region in the discharge curve, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Voltage</td>
<td>Battery voltage $E_{nom}$ at the end of the nominal region in the discharge curve, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Capacity</td>
<td>Maximum capacity $Q_{max}$ of the battery cell, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exponential Point Capacity</td>
<td>Battery capacity $Q_{top}$ at the end of the exponential region in the discharge curve, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Capacity</td>
<td>Battery capacity $Q_{nom}$ at the end of the nominal region in the discharge curve, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial State of Charge</td>
<td>Initial state of charge (SOC) (from 0 to 1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the extra node at the top of the battery image or at the side of the battery cell symbol image is for the SOC output. It is a control circuit node.

Parameter $E_{rated}$, $E_{cut}$, and $Q_{rated}$ can be directly read from manufacturer datasheet. Some other parameters can be obtained from the battery discharge curve.

A typical discharge curve is shown in the figure below.
The capacity factor is roughly the ratio between $Q_0$ (the capacity at 0V) and $Q_{\text{max}}$. It is a value close to 1, and it needs to be adjusted such that the battery voltage is equal to $E_{\text{cut}}$ when SOC = 0.

Note that the battery parameters are all for one battery cell, while the model can be used to define a battery pack where the number of cells in series or in parallel is not 1. For a battery pack, all voltages need to be multiplied by $N_s \cdot K_s$, all capacities by $N_p \cdot K_p$, and the resistance by $N_s/N_p$. For example, for the entire battery pack:

$$E_{\text{rated\_total}} = N_s \cdot K_s \cdot E_{\text{rated}}$$
$$E_{\text{cut\_total}} = N_s \cdot K_s \cdot E_{\text{cut}}$$
$$E_{\text{full\_total}} = N_s \cdot K_s \cdot E_{\text{full}}$$
$$E_{\text{top\_total}} = N_s \cdot K_s \cdot E_{\text{top}}$$
$$E_{\text{nom\_total}} = N_s \cdot K_s \cdot E_{\text{nom}}$$
$$Q_{\text{rated\_total}} = N_p \cdot K_p \cdot Q_{\text{rated}}$$
$$Q_{\text{max\_total}} = N_p \cdot K_p \cdot Q_{\text{max}}$$
$$Q_{\text{top\_total}} = N_p \cdot K_p \cdot Q_{\text{top}}$$
$$Q_{\text{nom\_total}} = N_p \cdot K_p \cdot Q_{\text{nom}}$$
$$R_{\text{battery\_total}} = \frac{N_s}{N_p} \cdot R_{\text{battery}}$$

For a detailed description on how to define and use the lithium-ion battery model, please refer to the document "Tutorial - How to use Lithium-Ion battery model.pdf".
4.11.4 Battery (Lookup Table) Model

A battery model based on lookup tables is provided.

**Image:**

![Image of battery model](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells ( N_s ) in series of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells ( N_p ) in parallel of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Derating Factor</td>
<td>Voltage derating factor ( K_v ), from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Derating Factor</td>
<td>Capacity derating factor ( K_p ), from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Capacity</td>
<td>Maximum capacity ( Q_{max} ) of the battery cell, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial State of Charge</td>
<td>Initial state of charge (SOC) (from 0 to 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCV-SOC Table</td>
<td>Table of the open circuit voltage (OCV) vs. the state of charge (SOC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-SOC Table (discharge)</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance Rin vs. SOC during the discharge process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-SOC Table (charge)</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance Rin vs. SOC during the charge process</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the extra node at the top of the battery image is for the SOC output. It is a control circuit node.

Note that the battery parameters are all for one battery cell, while the model can be used to define a battery pack where the number of cells in series or in parallel is not 1. For a battery pack, all voltages need to be multiplied by \( N_s \times K_v \), all capacities by \( N_p \times K_p \), and the resistance by \( N_s / N_p \).

The equivalent circuit of the battery is shown below.

![Equivalent circuit of battery](image)

For the internal resistance Rin, two tables can be defined: one during the discharge process, and another during the charge process.

Below is the procedure to obtain the lookup tables from manufacture datasheet:

- From the Utilities menu, select **Curve Capture Tool**, and capture two discharge curves of the battery voltage versus the discharge capacity from the datasheet at different discharge currents.

- Load the file "Extracting OCV and Rin_discharge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table"). Set the discharge currents and use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display OCV and Rin_discharge separately with SOC as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select **File >> Save Display As** and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The OCV and Rin_discharge tables are ready to use by the model.
• From the Utilities menu, select Curve Capture Tool, and capture the charge curves of the battery voltage, charge current, and charge capacity versus time.

• Load the file "Extracting Rin_charge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table"). Use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display Rin_charge with SOC as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select File >> Save Display As and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The Rin_charge table is ready to use by the model.

4.11.5 Battery (Lookup Table SOC) Model

A battery model based on lookup tables is provided. The difference between this model and the battery (lookup table) model is that in this model, the discharge capacity points corresponding to SOC=0 and SOC=1 can be defined.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_s$ in series of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_p$ in parallel of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Derating Factor</td>
<td>Voltage derating factor $K_s$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Derating Factor</td>
<td>Capacity derating factor $K_p$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Capacity</td>
<td>Maximum capacity $Q_{max}$ of the battery cell, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Capacity SOC=1</td>
<td>Discharge capacity of the battery cell $Q_{ext1}$ corresponding to the state of charge SOC=1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Capacity SOC=0</td>
<td>Discharge capacity of the battery cell $Q_{ext0}$ corresponding to SOC=0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial State of Charge</td>
<td>Initial state of charge (SOC) (from 0 to 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCV-SOC Table</td>
<td>Table of the open circuit voltage (OCV) vs. the state of charge (SOC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-SOC Table (discharge)</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance Rin vs. SOC during the discharge process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-SOC Table (charge)</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance Rin vs. SOC during the charge process</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the extra node at the top of the battery image is for the SOC output. It is a control circuit node.

Note that the battery parameters are all for one battery cell, while the model can be used to define a battery pack where the number of cells in series or in parallel is not 1. For a battery pack, all voltages need to be multiplied by $N_s * K_s$, all capacities by $N_p * K_p$, and the resistance by $N_s / N_p$.

The equivalent circuit of the battery is shown below.
For the internal resistance $R_{in}$, two tables can be defined: one during the discharge process, and another during the charge process.

For a discharge curve, typically SOC is defined such that when the discharge capacity is 0 (at the beginning of the discharge), SOC=1; and when the discharge capacity is $Q_{max}$, SOC=0. However, in this model, one has the option to define where the points for SOC=0 and SOC=1 are, as shown in the figure below.

In this model, SOC can be less than 0 or greater than 1.

Note that the three lookup tables OCV, $R_{in}$ (discharge), and $R_{in}$ (charge) are all obtained with the traditional SOC definition. That is, SOC=1 when the discharge capacity is 0, and SOC=0 when the discharge capacity is $Q_{max}$.

Below is the procedure to obtain the lookup tables from manufacture datasheet:

- From the **Utilities** menu, select **Curve Capture Tool**, and capture two discharge curves of the battery voltage versus the discharge capacity from the datasheet at different discharge currents.

- Load the file "Extracting OCV and $R_{in}$ discharge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table (SOC)""). Set the discharge currents and use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display OCV and $R_{in}$ discharge separately with SOC as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select **File >> Save Display As** and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The OCV and $R_{in}$ discharge tables are ready to use by the model.

- From the **Utilities** menu, select **Curve Capture Tool**, and capture the charge curves of the battery voltage, charge current, and charge capacity versus time.

- Load the file "Extracting $R_{in}$ charge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table (SOC)""). Use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display $R_{in}$ charge with SOC as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select **File >> Save Display As** and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The $R_{in}$ charge table is ready to use by the model.
### 4.11.6 Battery (Lookup Table Q) Model

A battery model based on lookup tables is provided. This model is the same as the battery (lookup table SOC) model except that the lookup tables are a function of the charge/discharge capacity instead of SOC. Similarly, in this model, the discharge capacity points corresponding to SOC=0 and SOC=1 can be defined.

**Image:**

![Battery Model](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_s$ in series of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells $N_p$ in parallel of a battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Derating Factor</td>
<td>Voltage derating factor $K_s$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacity Derating Factor</td>
<td>Capacity derating factor $K_p$, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Capacity</td>
<td>Maximum capacity $Q_{max}$ of the battery cell, in Ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Capacity SOC=1</td>
<td>Discharge capacity of the battery cell $Q_{ext1}$ corresponding to the state of charge SOC=1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge Capacity SOC=0</td>
<td>Discharge capacity of the battery cell $Q_{ext0}$ corresponding to SOC=0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial State of Charge</td>
<td>Initial state of charge (SOC) (from 0 to 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCV-Qdischarge Table</td>
<td>Table of the open circuit voltage (OCV) vs. the discharge capacity $Q_{discharge}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-Qdischarge Table</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance $R_{in}$ vs. $Q_{discharge}$ during the discharge process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rin-Qcharge Table</td>
<td>Table of the internal resistance $R_{in}$ vs. the charge capacity $Q_{charge}$ during the charge process</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the extra node at the top of the battery image is for the SOC output. It is a control circuit node.

Note that the battery parameters are all for one battery cell, while the model can be used to define a battery pack where the number of cells in series or in parallel is not 1. For a battery pack, all voltages need to be multiplied by $N_sK_s$, all capacities by $N_pK_p$, and the resistance by $N_s/N_p$.

The equivalent circuit of the battery is shown below.

![Equivalent Circuit](image)

For the internal resistance $R_{in}$, two tables can be defined: one during the discharge process, and another during the charge process.

For a discharge curve, typically SOC is defined such that when the discharge capacity is 0 (at the beginning of the discharge), SOC=1; and when the discharge capacity is $Q_{max}$, SOC=0. However, in this model, one has the...
option to define where the points for SOC=0 and SOC=1 are, as shown in the figure below.

In this model, SOC can be less than 0 or greater than 1.

Note that the three lookup tables OCV, Rin (discharge), and Rin (charge) are all obtained with the traditional SOC definition. That is, SOC=1 when the discharge capacity is 0, and SOC=0 when the discharge capacity is Qmax.

Below is the procedure to obtain the lookup tables from manufacture datasheet:

- From the Utilities menu, select Curve Capture Tool, and capture two discharge curves of the battery voltage versus the discharge capacity from the datasheet at different discharge currents.

- Load the file "Extracting OCV and Rin_discharge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table (Q)"). Set the discharge currents and use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display OCV and Rin_discharge separately with the discharge capacity as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select File >> Save Display As and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The OCV and Rin_discharge tables are ready to use by the model.

- From the Utilities menu, select Curve Capture Tool, and capture the charge curves of the battery voltage, charge current, and charge capacity versus time.

- Load the file "Extracting Rin_charge.psimsch" (in "examples\batteries\lookup table (Q)"). Use the tables from the previous step. Run simulation, and display Rin_charge with the charge capacity Qcharge as the x-axis variable. In Simview, select File >> Save Display As and save the curve to a text file. Open the file with a text editor and remove the first line. The Rin_charge table is ready to use by the model.

4.11.7 Ultracapacitor Model

Ultracapacitors are electrical energy storage devices that offer high power density and a high number of charge and discharge cycles.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells in series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells in parallel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance per Cell</td>
<td>Nominal capacitance per cell, in F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient Kv</td>
<td>Voltage coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R1</td>
<td>Resistance coefficient R1, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance C1</td>
<td>Capacitance coefficient C1, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R2</td>
<td>Resistance coefficient R2, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance C2</td>
<td>Capacitance coefficient C2, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R3</td>
<td>Resistance coefficient R3, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitance C3</td>
<td>Capacitance coefficient C3, in F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resistance R4</td>
<td>Resistance coefficient R4, in Ohm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Voltage</td>
<td>Maximum voltage rating per cell, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Voltage</td>
<td>Initial capacitor voltage per cell, in V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parameters Kv, R1, and C1 are associated with the capacitor response in the short term (in seconds). Parameters R2 and C2 are associated with the response in the medium term (in minutes). Parameters R3 and C3 are associated with the response in the long term (in hundreds of minutes). The parameter R4 is associated with capacitor losses due to self-discharge.

For further information on how to use the model, please refer to the tutorial "Tutorial - Ultracapacitor model.pdf".
Control Circuit Components

This chapter provides descriptions for the components in PSIM’s element library.

5.1 Transfer Function Blocks

A transfer function block is expressed in polynomial form as:

\[ G(s) = k \cdot \frac{B_n \cdot s^n + \ldots + B_2 \cdot s^2 + B_1 \cdot s + B_0}{A_n \cdot s^n + \ldots + A_2 \cdot s^2 + A_1 \cdot s + A_0} \]

Two types of transfer function blocks are provided: one with zero initial values (the element is called \( s \)-domain Transfer Function in the PSIM library) and the other with initial values as input parameters (called \( s \)-domain Transfer Function (initial value) in the PSIM library).

Image:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi(t \{s\}) = 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order ( n )</td>
<td>Order ( n ) of the transfer function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain ( k ) of the transfer function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( B_n \ldots B_0 )</td>
<td>Coefficients of the numerator (from ( B_n ) to ( B_0 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( A_n \ldots A_0 )</td>
<td>Coefficients of the denominator (from ( A_n ) to ( A_0 ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Values ( x_n \ldots x_1 )</td>
<td>Initial values of the state variables ( x_n ) to ( x_1 ) (for the element ( s )-domain Transfer Function (initial value) only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let \( Y(s) = G(s) \cdot U(s) \) where \( Y(s) \) is the output and \( U(s) \) is the input, we can convert the \( s \)-domain expression into the differential equation form as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{dt} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & -A_{n}/A_n \\ 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & -A_{1}/A_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & 1 & -A_{n-1}/A_n \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} + \frac{k}{A_n} \begin{bmatrix} B_0 - A_0 \cdot B_n/A_n \\ B_1 - A_1 \cdot B_n/A_n \\ \vdots \\ B_{n-1} - A_{n-1} \cdot B_n/A_n \end{bmatrix} \cdot u \\
\end{align*}
\]

The output equation in the time domain can be expressed as:

\[ y = x_n + k \cdot \frac{B_n}{A_n} \cdot u \]

The initial values of the state variables \( x_n \) to \( x_1 \) can be specified as the inputs in the element \( s \)-domain Transfer Function (initial value).

Example:

The following is a second-order transfer function:
In PSIM, the specification will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order ( n )</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( B_n \ldots B_0 )</td>
<td>0. 0. 400.e3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( A_p \ldots A_o )</td>
<td>1. 1200. 400.e3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.1.1 Proportional Controller

The output of a proportional (P) controller is equal to the input multiplied by a gain.

Image:

![Proportional Controller Image](image1)

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain ( k ) of the transfer function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.1.2 Integrator

There are three types of integrators: regular integrator, external resettable integrator, and internal resettable integrator.

Images:

![Integrator Images](image2)

Attributes:

For Regular Integrator:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant ( T ) of the integrator, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Output Value</td>
<td>Initial value of the output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For External Resettable Integrator:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant ( T ) of the integrator, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Output Value</td>
<td>Initial value of the output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Flag</td>
<td>Reset flag (0: edge reset; 1: level reset)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For *Internal Resettable Integrator*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant $T$ of the integrator, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Output Value</td>
<td>Initial value of the output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Output Limit</td>
<td>Lower limit of the output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Output Limit</td>
<td>Upper limit of the output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transfer function of an integrator is:

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{sT}$$

The Bode plot of the amplitude $|G|$ and the phase angle $\Phi$ of the integrator is shown as below:

The output of the external resettable integrator can be reset by an external control signal (at the bottom of the block). For the edge reset (reset flag = 0), the integrator output is reset to zero at the rising edge of the control signal. For the level reset (reset flag = 1), the integrator output is reset to zero as long as the control signal is high (1).

The output of the internal resettable integrator is reset to 0 when the output reaches either the lower limit or the upper limit. It works in the same way as the external resettable integrator with the edge reset, except that in this case users do not need to set up the external reset circuit.

When a limiter is connected to the integrator output, anti-windup is implemented automatically.

**Example:**

The following circuit illustrates the use of the resettable integrator. The input of the integrator is a dc quantity. The control input of the integrator is a pulse waveform which resets the integrator output at the end of each cycle. The reset flag is set to 0.
5.1.3 **Differentiator**

The transfer function of a differentiator is:

\[ G(s) = sT \]

A differentiator is calculated as follows:

\[ v_o(t) = T \cdot \frac{v_{in}(t) - v_{in}(t-\Delta t)}{\Delta t} \]

where \( \Delta t \) is the simulation time step, \( v_{in}(t) \) and \( v_{in}(t-\Delta t) \) are the input values at the present and the previous time step.

Since sudden changes of the input will generate spikes at the output, it is recommended that a low-pass filter be placed at the input of the differentiator.

5.1.4 **Proportional-Integral Controller**

A proportional-integral (PI) controller is defined as below.

The transfer function of a PI controller is defined as:

\[ G(s) = k \cdot \frac{1 + sT}{sT} \]

The Bode plot of the amplitude \( |G| \) and the phase angle \( \Phi \) of the PI controller is shown below:

When a limiter is connected to the PI output, anti-windup is implemented automatically.
5.1.5 **Single-Pole Controller**

A single-pole controller is a proportional controller with a pole. It is defined as below.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain $k$ of the controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pole Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency of the pole $f_c$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transfer function of the single-pole is defined as:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{\omega_c}{s + \omega_c}$$

where $\omega_c = 2\pi f_c$.

The Bode plot of the amplitude $|G|$ and the phase angle $\Phi$ of the single-pole controller is shown as below:

---

5.1.6 **Modified PI Controller**

A modified PI controller (Type-2) consists of a PI with a pole.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain $k$ of the PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant $T$ of the PI portion of the controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pole Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency of the pole $f_c$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transfer function of a modified PI controller is defined as:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{1 + sT}{s} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + sT_c}$$

where $T_c = \frac{1}{\omega_c}$ and $\omega_c = 2\pi f_c$.

The Bode plot of the amplitude $|G|$ and the phase angle $\Phi$ of the PI controller is shown as below:
When a limiter is connected to the PI output, anti-windup is implemented automatically.

5.1.7 Type-3 Controller

A Type-3 controller consists of two zeros and two poles.

The transfer function of a Type-3 controller is defined as:

$$G(s) = k \frac{1 + sT_{z1}}{sT_{z1}} \cdot \frac{1 + sT_{z2}}{(1 + sT_{p1}) \cdot (1 + sT_{p2})}$$

where $T_{z1} = \frac{1}{2\pi f_{z1}}$, $T_{z2} = \frac{1}{2\pi f_{z2}}$, $T_{p1} = \frac{1}{2\pi f_{p1}}$, and $T_{p2} = \frac{1}{2\pi f_{p2}}$.

The Bode plot of the amplitude $|G|$ and the phase angle $\Phi$ of the Type-3 controller is shown as below:

When a limiter is connected to the controller output, anti-windup is implemented automatically.
5.1.8 Built-in Filter Blocks

Four second-order filters and one first-order filter are provided as built-in blocks in PSIM.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2nd-order low-pass</th>
<th>2nd-order high-pass</th>
<th>2nd-order band-pass</th>
<th>2nd-order band-stop</th>
<th>1st-order low-pass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Attributes for second-order filters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain $k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping Ratio</td>
<td>Damping ratio $\xi$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off Frequency</td>
<td>Cut-off frequency $f_c$ ($f_c = \frac{\omega_c}{2\pi}$) for low-pass and high-pass filters, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center Frequency</td>
<td>Center frequency $f_o$ ($f_o = \frac{\omega_o}{2\pi}$) for band-pass and band-stop filter, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passing Band; Stopping Band</td>
<td>Frequency width $f_b$ ($f_b = \frac{B}{2\pi}$) of the passing/stopping band for band-pass/band-stop filters, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attributes for first-order low-pass filter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain $k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off Frequency</td>
<td>Cut-off frequency $f_c$ ($f_c = \frac{\omega_c}{2\pi}$) of the low-pass filter, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transfer function of these filters are listed below.

For second-order low-pass filter:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{\omega_c^2}{s^2 + 2\xi \omega_c s + \omega_c^2}$$

For second-order high-pass filter:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{s^2}{s^2 + 2\xi \omega_c s + \omega_c^2}$$

For second-order band-pass filter:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{B \cdot s}{s^2 + B \cdot s + \omega_o^2}$$

For second-order band-stop filter:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{s^2 + \omega_o^2}{s^2 + B \cdot s + \omega_o^2}$$

For first-order low-pass filter:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{\omega_c}{s + \omega_c}$$
5.2  Computational Function Blocks

5.2.1  Summer

The input of a one-input summer or two-input summer can be either a scalar or a vector. The input of a three-input summer can only be a scalar.

Images:

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain _i</td>
<td>Gain ( k_i ) for the ( i )th input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the three-input summer, the input with a dot is the first input.

If the inputs are scalar, the output of a summer with \( n \) inputs is defined as:

\[
V_o = k_1 V_1 + k_2 V_2 + \ldots + k_n V_n
\]

If the input is a vector, the output of a two-input summer will also be a vector, which is defined as:

\[
\begin{align*}
V_1 &= [a_1 \ a_2 \ \ldots \ a_n] \\
V_2 &= [b_1 \ b_2 \ \ldots \ b_n] \\
V_o &= V_1 + V_2 = [a_1+b_1 \ a_2+b_2 \ \ldots \ a_n+b_n]
\end{align*}
\]

The output of a one-input summer, however, will still be a scalar which is equal to the summation of the input vector elements, that is, \( V_o = a_1 + a_2 + \ldots a_n \).

5.2.2  Multiplier and Divider

The output of a multipliers or divider is equal to the multiplication or division of two inputs.

Images:

For the divider, the dotted node is for the numerator input.

The input of a multiplier can be either a vector or a scalar. If the two inputs are vectors, their dimensions must be equal. Let the two inputs be:

\[
\begin{align*}
V_1 &= [a_1 \ a_2 \ \ldots \ a_n] \\
V_2 &= [b_1 \ b_2 \ \ldots \ b_n]
\end{align*}
\]

The output, which is a scalar, will be:

\[
V_o = V_1 \cdot V_2^T = a_1*b_1 + a_2*b_2 + a_n*b_n
\]
5.2.3 Square-Root

A square-root function block calculates the square root of the input.

\[ V_o = \sqrt{V_{in}} \]

5.2.4 Exponential/Power/Logarithmic Functions

The images and attributes of these function blocks are shown below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Exponential} & \quad \text{Power} & \quad \text{LOG} & \quad \text{LOG10} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\( e^x \)} \\
\text{\( x^8 \)} \\
\text{\( \log \)} \\
\text{\( \log_{10} \)}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

Attributes (for exponential and power blocks):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient ( k_1 )</td>
<td>Coefficient ( k_1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient ( k_2 )</td>
<td>Coefficient ( k_2 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output of an exponential function block is defined as:

\[ V_o = k_1 \cdot k_2^{V_{in}} \]

For example, if \( k_1 = 1 \), \( k_2 = 2.718281828 \), and \( V_{in} = 2.5 \), then \( V_o = e^{2.5} \) where \( e \) is the base of the natural logarithm.

The output of a power function block is defined as:

\[ V_o = k_1 \cdot V_{in}^{k_2} \]

The function block LOG gives the natural logarithm (base \( e \)) of the input, and the block LOG10 gives the common logarithm (base 10) of the input.

5.2.5 Root-Mean-Square

A root-mean-square function block calculates the RMS value of the input over a period specified by the base frequency \( f_b \). The output is defined as:

\[ V_{rms} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T V_{in}^2(t) \, dt} \]

where \( T = 1/f_b \). The output is only updated at the beginning of each period.

\[ V_{rms} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T V_{in}^2(t) \, dt} \]

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base frequency</td>
<td>Base frequency ( f_b ) in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.6 Absolute and Sign Functions

An absolute value function block gives the absolute value of the input. A sign function block gives the sign of the input, i.e., the output is 1 if the input is positive, 0 if the input is 0, and -1 if the input is negative.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolute</th>
<th>Sign</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Absolute Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sign Function" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2.7 Trigonometric Functions

The following trigonometric functions are provided: sine (sin), cosine (cos), arc-sine (sin⁻¹), arc-cosine (cos⁻¹), tangent (tan), arc-tangent (tg⁻¹), and arc-tangent 2 (atan2).

The output is equal to the corresponding trigonometric function of the input. For the sin, cos, and tan blocks, the input can be in degree, radian, or per unit. And for the arcsin, arccos, and arctangent blocks, the output can be in degree, radian, or per unit.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input in deg.</th>
<th>sin</th>
<th>sin⁻¹</th>
<th>cos</th>
<th>cos⁻¹</th>
<th>tan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Input in Deg" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sin Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Arcsine Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cos Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Arccos Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tangent Function" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input in rad.</th>
<th>sin</th>
<th>cos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Input in Rad" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sin Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cos Function" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input in per unit</th>
<th>sin</th>
<th>cos</th>
<th>tan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Input in Per Unit" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sin Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cos Function" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tangent Function" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>x</th>
<th>y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Arc tangent" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Arc tangent 2" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the input of a block has the letter "r", it is in radian. If the input has the letter "u", it is in per unit. Otherwise it is in deg.

In the arctangent and arctangent 2 blocks, the input node marked with \( x \) is the real part, and the other input node marked with \( y \) is the imaginary part. If the output has the letter "u", the output is in per unit.

The output of the arctangent and arctangent 2 blocks is the inverse tangent of the ratio between the imaginary part \( y \) and the real part \( x \), i.e. \( \theta = \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \). The output of the arctangent block is in degree, and the range is from 0 to 360°. On the other hand, the output of the arctangent 2 block is in radian, and the range is from \(-\pi\) to \(+\pi\). The arctangent 2 block behaves in the same way as the function \( \text{atan2}(y,x) \) in the C language.

5.2.8 Fast Fourier Transform

A Fast Fourier Transform block calculates the fundamental component of the input signal. The FFT algorithm is based on the radix-2/decimation-in-frequency method. The number of sampling points within one fundamental period should be \( 2^N \) (where \( N \) is an integer). The maximum number of sampling points allowed is 1024.

The output gives the peak amplitude and the phase angle of the input fundamental component. The output voltage (in complex form) is defined as:
The dotted node of the block refers to the output of the amplitude. Note that the phase angle output has been internally adjusted such that a sine function $V_m \sin(\omega t)$ will give a phase angle output of 0.

Note that the FFT block only works if the input signal contains dc, the fundamental component, and harmonics of the fundamental components (with the frequencies at multiple integer times of the fundamental frequency). If the input signal contains another component that is not multiple integer of the fundamental frequency, the FFT block will not give the correct result.

Also, the FFT block only measures the fundamental component, not any other harmonics. For example, if the input signal contains 60 Hz (fundamental) and 180 Hz, if the parameter "Fundamental Frequency" is set to 180, the FFT block output will be incorrect.

**Example:**

In the circuit below, the voltage $v_{in}$ contains a fundamental component $v_1$ (100 V at 60 Hz), a 5th harmonic voltage $v_5$ (25 V at 300 Hz), and a 7th harmonic $v_7$ (25 V at 420 Hz). After one cycle, the FFT block output reaches the steady state with the amplitude of 100 V and the phase angle of 0°.

**5.2.9 Maximum/Minimum Function**

A maximum/minimum function block detects the maximum or minimum of the inputs.

Image:
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Inputs</td>
<td>Number of inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Function Type</td>
<td>Function type of the block. It can be either Maximum or Minimum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of inputs can be changed through the drop-down menu.

### 5.2.10 MOD Function

A MOD function block performs the modulo operation.

**Image:**

The block has two inputs: the numerator input $V_{in,n}$ on the top left (with the letter "n"), and the denominator input $V_{in,d}$ on the bottom left (with the letter "d").

The block gives the remainder of the division $V_{in,n} / V_{in,d}$. For example, if $V_{in,n} = 10.1$ and $V_{in,d} = 2$, the output will be 0.1.

### 5.3 Other Function Blocks

#### 5.3.1 Comparator

The output of a comparator is high when the positive input is higher than the negative input. When the positive input is lower, the output is zero. If the two input are equal, the output is undefined and it will keep the previous value.

**Image:**

Note that the comparator image is similar to that of the op. amp. For the comparator, the noninverting input is at the upper left and the inverting input is at the lower left. For the op. amp., however, it is the opposite.

#### 5.3.2 Hysteresis Comparator

A hysteresis comparator provides a hysteresis band when comparing the input.

**Image:**

The node definitions are shows above. The output $V_{on}$ is complementary to the output $V_o$.

When the input $V_{in}$ is equal or greater than the upper voltage threshold $V_{upper}$, the output $V_o$ will change to 1. When $V_{in}$ is equal or less than the lower voltage threshold $V_{lower}$, the output $V_o$ will change to 0. The waveforms are shown below.
5.3.3 Limiters

Four types of limiters are provided to limit the amplitude of a signal: lower/upper limiter, lower limiter, upper limiter, and range limiter.

**Images:**

![Image of limiters](image1.png)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit</td>
<td>Lower limit $V_{lower}$ of the limiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit</td>
<td>Upper limit $V_{upper}$ of the limiter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a lower/upper limiter, or lower limiter, or upper limiter, the output of the limiter is clamped to the upper or lower limit whenever the input exceeds the limiter range. If the input is within the limit, the output is equal to the input.

A range limiter limits the output $v_o$ between the lower limit and the upper limit, that is:

$$ V_{lower} \leq v_o < V_{upper} $$

Let the range of the upper limit and the lower limit be $V_{range}$. When the output is equal to or greater than the upper limit, the output is subtracted by the range $V_{range}$ until it is within the range. When the output is below the lower limit, it is added by range $V_{range}$ until it is within the range. When the input is within the limit, the output is equal to the input.

5.3.4 Gradient (dv/dt) Limiter

A gradient (dv/dt) limiter limits the rate of change of the input. If the rate of change is within the limit, the output is equal to the input.

**Image:**

![Image of gradient limiter](image2.png)

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dv/dt Limit</td>
<td>Limit of the rate of change (dv/dt) of the input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3.5 Trapezoidal and Square Blocks

Trapezoidal waveform blocks and square waveform blocks are specific types of lookup tables: the output and the input relationship is either a trapezoidal or a square waveform.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trapezoidal Waveform</th>
<th>Square Waveform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Trapezoidal Waveform Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Square Waveform Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the trapezoidal waveform block:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rising Angle theta</td>
<td>Rising angle $\theta$, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak Value</td>
<td>Peak value $V_{pk}$ of the waveform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the square waveform block:

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Width (deg.)</td>
<td>Pulse width $\theta$ in half cycle, in deg.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The waveforms of these two blocks are shown below. Note that the input $v_{in}$ is in deg., and can be in the range of $-360^\circ$ to $360^\circ$. Both waveforms are half-wave and quarter-wave symmetrical.

5.3.6 Sampling/Hold Block

A sampling/hold block samples the input when the control signal changes from low to high (from 0 to 1), and holds this value until the next point is sampled.

Image:

![Sampling/Hold Block Image](image3.png)

The difference between this block and the zero-order hold block (ZOH) in Digital Control Module is that this block is treated as a continuous element and sampling moments can be controlled externally; whereas the zero-order hold block is a discrete element and the sampling moments are fixed and of equal distance.

For a discrete system, the zero-order hold block should be used.

Example:

In this example, a sinusoidal input is sampled. The control signal is a square wave voltage source with an amplitude of 1.
5.3.7 Round-Off Block

The image of a round-off block is shown below:

**Image:**

![Round-Off Block Image]

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Digits</td>
<td>No. of digits N after the decimal point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Truncation Flag</td>
<td>Truncation flag (1: truncation; 0: round-off)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let the input of the round-off block be $V_{in}$. The input is first scaled based on the following expression:

$$V_{in,new} = V_{in} \cdot 10^N$$

If the truncation flag is 1, the output will be equal to $V_{in,new}$ truncated, and then divided by $10^N$. Otherwise, the output will be equal to $V_{in,new}$ rounded off to the nearest integer, and then divided by $10^N$.

**Examples:**

If $V_{in} = 34.5678$, $N = 0$, truncation flag = 0, then we have the output $V_{out} = 35$. Similarly, if $V_{in} = 34.5678$, $N = 0$, truncation flag = 1, then $V_{out} = 34$.

If $V_{in} = 34.5678$, $N = 1$, truncation flag = 1, then $V_{out} = 34.5$. If $V_{in} = 34.5678$, $N = -1$, truncation flag = 1, then $V_{out} = 30$.

5.3.8 Time Delay Blocks

Two types of time delay blocks are provided: one with arbitrary delay time, and the other with only one simulation time step.

**Images:**

![Time Delay Blocks Image]

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delay Time</td>
<td>Delay time, in sec. (for the Time Delay block only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A time delay block delays the input signal by a specified amount of time interval. The input signal can be an analog signal or logic signal. For example, it can be used to model the propagation delay of a logic element.
A unit time delay block delays the input signal by just one simulation time step. If the simulation time step is changed, the delay time will be changed accordingly.

Note that the difference between the unit time delay block and the unit delay block in Digital Control Module is that this block is a continuous element and the delay time is one simulation time step; whereas the unit delay block is a discrete element and the delay time is equal to the sampling period.

For a discrete system, the unit delay block should be used.

### 5.3.9 Multiplexer

The output of a multiplexer is equal to a selected input depending on the control signal. Two types of multiplexers are provided: One with binary control inputs, and the other with individual control inputs.

#### Images:

In the images, d0..d7 are the data inputs; and s0..s2 are the control inputs. The truth tables of the multiplexers are as follows.

For multiplexers with binary control inputs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2-Input</th>
<th>4-Input</th>
<th>8-Input</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s0</td>
<td>s1</td>
<td>s2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>d0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>d1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For multiplexers with individual control inputs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3-Input</th>
<th>4-Input</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>s1</td>
<td>s0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otherwise</td>
<td>d2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the data input could be either an analog or digital signal.

**Example:**

The following circuit selects the maximum value out of two inputs. When \( V_a \) is greater than \( V_b \), the comparator output will be 1, and \( V_o = V_a \). Otherwise \( V_o = V_b \).
5.3.10 THD Block

The total harmonic distortion (THD) of an ac waveform that contains both the fundamental and harmonic components is defined as:

\[ THD = \frac{V_h}{V_1} = \frac{\sqrt{V_{rms}^2 - V_1^2}}{V_1} \]

where \( V_1 \) is the fundamental component (rms), \( V_h \) is the harmonic rms value, and \( V_{rms} \) is the overall rms value of the waveform. The THD block is modelled as shown below.

Image:

A second-order band-pass filter is used to extract the fundamental component. The center frequency and the passing band of the band-pass filter need to be specified.

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fundamental Frequency</td>
<td>Fundamental frequency of the input, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passing Band</td>
<td>Passing band of the band-pass filter, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

In the single-phase thyristor circuit below, a THD block is used to measure the THD of the input current. The delay angle of the thyristor bridge is chosen as 30°. For the THD block, the fundamental frequency is set at 60 Hz and the passing band of the filter is set at 20 Hz. The simulation results are shown on the right.
One of the THD block output is the input current fundamental component $i_{s1}$. By comparing the phase difference between the input voltage $v_s$ and the current $i_{s1}$, one can calculate the input displacement power factor. This, together with the THD value, can be used to calculate the input power factor.

### 5.3.11 Space Vector PWM

A space vector PWM block is used in a carrier-wave based PWM scheme. It transforms 3-phase input signals to achieve the effect of space vector PWM.

**Image:**

When a 3-phase sinusoidal signal is applied to the inputs of the block, the output waveforms are shown below.

The fundamental component of the output is 1.155 times the value of the input.

### 5.3.12 Space Vector PWM (alpha/beta)

The space vector PWM (alpha/beta) block is used in a carrier-based PWM scheme. It transforms two-phase orthogonal alpha/beta input signals to achieve the effect of space vector PWM.

**Image:**

When two sinusoidal signals, with the beta input lagging the alpha input by 90 deg., are applied to the inputs of the block, the output waveforms are shown below.
The fundamental component of the output is 1.155 times the value of the input.

5.4 Logic Components

5.4.1 Logic Gates

Basic logic gates are AND, OR, XORGATE (exclusive-OR), NOT, NAND, and NOR gates.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Flag</td>
<td>Trigger flag (0: edge-triggered; 1: level-triggered)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An edge-triggered flip-flop only changes the states at the rising edge of the set/reset input. The truth table of an edge-triggered flip-flop is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>Q</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>no change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>↑</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A level-triggered flip-flop, on the other hand, changes the states based on the input level. The truth table of a
level-triggered set-reset flip-flop is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>Q</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>no change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.4.3 J-K Flip-Flops

Two types of J-K flip-flops are provided: One without the set/reset inputs, and the other with the set input (\(S\)) and reset input (\(R\)). For the element without the set and reset inputs, it is assumed that both set/reset inputs are high (1).

**Images:**

A J-K flip-flop is positive edge triggered, and the truth table is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>J</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>Clock</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>Q</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>no change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>Toggle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x: Do not care

### 5.4.4 D Flip-Flops

Two types of D flip-flops are provided: One without the set/reset inputs, and the other with the set input (\(S\)) and reset input (\(R\)). For the element without the set and reset inputs, it is assumed that both set/reset inputs are high (1).

**Images:**

A D flip-flop is positive edge triggered, and the truth table is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Clock</th>
<th>Q</th>
<th>Q</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.5 Monostable Multivibrator

In a monostable multivibrator, the positive (or negative) edge of the input signal triggers the monostable. A pulse, with the specified pulse width, will be generated at the output.

The output pulse width can be either fixed or adjusted through another input variable. The latter type of monostables is referred to as controlled monostables. Its on-time pulse width, in second, is determined by the control input.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monostable</th>
<th>Controlled Monostable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Monostable Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Controlled Monostable Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Width</td>
<td>On-time pulse width, in sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The input node at the bottom of the controlled monostable block is for the pulse width input.

5.4.6 Bit Shift

A bit shift block performs left shift or right shift depending on the sign of the bit input.

Image:

![Bit Shift Diagram](image3.png)

The lower left input node with the letter b is for the bit input. If the bit input is not an integer, it is rounded to the nearest integer.

When the bit input is positive, the block performs left shift. For example, if the bit input is 3, the output is equal to the input multiplied by 2^3.

When the bit input is negative, the block performs right shift. For example, if the bit input is 3, the output is equal to the input divided by 2^3.

5.4.7 Pulse Width Counter

A pulse width counter measures the width of a pulse. The rising edge of the input activates the counter. At the falling edge of the input, the output gives the width of the pulse (in sec.). During the interval of two falling pulse edges, the pulse width counter output remains unchanged.

Image:

![Pulse Width Counter Diagram](image4.png)
5.4.8 Up/Down Counter

An up/down counter increments or decrements by 1 at each rising edge of the clock.

**Image:**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preset Enable</th>
<th>Preset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Bits</td>
<td>Number of bits N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the Up/Down input is 0, the counter decrements, and when the Up/Down input is 1, the counter increments.

The Reset input resets the counter to 0 when it is high (1). The Preset Enable input sets the counter to the preset value when it is high.

The truth table of the counter is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Up/Down</th>
<th>Preset Enable</th>
<th>Reset</th>
<th>Clock</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>No count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>Count up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>↑</td>
<td>Count down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>Preset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>Reset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

x: Do not care

5.4.9 A/D and D/A Converters

A/D and D/A converters perform analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog conversion. Both 8-bit and 10-bit converters are provided.

**Images:**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADC (8-bit)</th>
<th>ADC (10-bit)</th>
<th>DAC (8-bit)</th>
<th>DAC (10-bit)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V_in</td>
<td>V_ref</td>
<td>D0</td>
<td>D0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D7</td>
<td></td>
<td>V_o</td>
<td>V_o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Let \( N \) be the number of bits. The output of the A/D converter is calculated as:

\[
V_o = \frac{2^N}{V_{ref}} \cdot V_{in}
\]
The output will be clamped to $2^N-1$.

For example, if $V_{\text{ref}} = 5$ V, $V_{\text{in}} = 3.2$ V, $N = 8$ bits, then

$$V_o = \frac{256}{5} \times 3.2 = 163.84 = 10100011 \text{ (binary)}$$

The output of the D/A converter is calculated as:

$$V_o = \frac{V_{\text{ref}}}{2^N} \times V_{\text{in}}$$

For example, if $V_{\text{ref}} = 5$ V, $V_{\text{in}} = 10100011 \text{ (binary)} = 163$, $N = 8$ bits, then

$$V_o = 163 / 256 \times 5 = 3.1836$$
5.5 Digital Control Module

The Digital Control Module is an add-on module to the basic PSIM program. It provides discrete elements, such as zero-order hold, z-domain transfer function blocks, digital filters, etc., for digital control system simulation.

In contrary to a s-domain circuit which is continuous, a z-domain circuit is discrete, and the calculation is only performed at the discrete sampling points. There is no calculation between two sampling points.

5.5.1 Motor Control Blocks

Elements in this subdivision are for digitally controlled motor drive systems. These blocks have similar functionality as the corresponding function blocks in the TI Digital Motor Control (DMC) library. Please refer to Chapter 11 of the SimCoder User Manual for more information.

5.5.1.1 Ramp Control

This block produces a ramp output when the input has a step change.

Image:

![Ramp Control Block Diagram]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit</td>
<td>Maximum ramp output, in per unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit</td>
<td>Minimum ramp output, in per unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Duration</td>
<td>Number of sampling period N at each step. It must be an integer equal to or greater than 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Size</td>
<td>Maximum ramp step change Vstep at the output, in per unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the output node with a small dot is the ramp output, and the other output node is the flag indicating that the output equals the input.

If the input is greater than the output, the output will increment by Vstep after a duration of N sampling periods. If the input is less than output, the output will decrement by Vstep after a duration of N sampling periods. If the input is equal to the output, the flag will be set to 1. Otherwise it will be 0.
5.5.1.2 Ramp Generator

This block generates a ramp output based on input settings.

**Image:**

```
Gain
Offset
Frequency
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base Frequency</td>
<td>Base frequency fb, in Hz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the first input is the Gain; the second input is the Offset; and the third input is the desired frequency freq for output ramp.

The ramp output waveform is shown below.

![Ramp Output Waveform](image)

The output ramp frequency is the multiple of the input value and the base frequency fb. The output range is limited from -1 to +1. Therefore, the range of Offset and Gain must be limited as: Offset + Gain <= 1.

5.5.1.3 Sliding Mode Observer (PMSM)

The function of this sliding mode observer block is to estimate the rotor position of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor (PMSM). This block behaves in the same way as the SMOPOS block of the TI DMC Library.

**Image:**

```
v
al
theta
be
i
al
be
be
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage</td>
<td>Motor base phase voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current</td>
<td>Motor base phase current, in A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5.1.4 Speed Calculator

This block calculates the motor speed based on the rotor angle \( \theta \).

**Image:**

![Image of Speed Calculator block](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base Frequency ( fb )</td>
<td>Base frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off Frequency</td>
<td>First-order low-pass filter cut-off frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The input signal \( \theta \) is the motor rotor electrical angle, in per unit. The output \( W_r \) is the estimated motor speed, in per unit. The output \( \text{rpm} \) is the estimated motor speed, in rpm. A first-order low-pass filter is used at the output variables.

5.5.1.5 Encoder

This block provides the function of the encoder with the ABZ signals.

**Image:**

![Image of Encoder block](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Counting Direction</td>
<td>Counting direction (0: counting up; 1: counting down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z Signal Polarity</td>
<td>Trigger polarity of the Z signal (0: active high; 1: active low)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encoder Resolution</td>
<td>Resolution of the encoder. If it is 0, the encoder counter will keep on counting and will not reset. If, for example, the resolution is 4096, the counter will be reset to 0 after it reaches 4095.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output of the encoder gives the counter value.
5.5.2 Zero-Order Hold

A zero-order hold samples the input at the point of sampling. The output remains unchanged between two sampling points.

Image:

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the zero-order hold, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like all other discrete elements, the zero-order hold has a free-running timer which determines the moment of sampling. The sampling moment is synchronized with the origin of the simulation time. For example, if the zero-order hold has a sampling frequency of 1000 Hz, the input will be sampled at 0, 1 msec., 2 msec., 3 msec., and so on.

Example:

In the following circuit, the zero-order hold sampling frequency is 1000 Hz. The input and output waveforms are shown on the left.

Note that in above circuit, a continuous-domain integrator is also connected to the input sine source. This makes it a mixed continuous-discrete circuit, and a simulation time step selected for the continuous circuit will be used. With this time step, the familiar staircase-like waveform can be observed at the zero-order hold output.

Without the integrator, the circuit becomes a discrete circuit. Since only the calculation at the discrete sampling points is needed, the simulation time step will be equal to the sampling period, and only the results at the sampling points are available. The waveforms, as shown below, appear continuous. In fact the waveforms are discrete, and the connection between two sampling points makes it look like continuous.
5.5.3 z-Domain Transfer Function Block

A z-domain transfer function block is expressed in polynomial form as:

\[ H(z) = \frac{b_0 \cdot z^N + b_1 \cdot z^{N-1} + \ldots + b_{N-1} \cdot z + b_N}{a_0 \cdot z^N + a_1 \cdot z^{N-1} + \ldots + a_{N-1} \cdot z + a_N} \]

If \( a_0 = 1 \), the expression \( Y(z) = H(z) \cdot U(z) \) can be expressed in difference equation as:

\[ y(n) = b_0 \cdot u(n) + b_1 \cdot u(n-1) + \ldots + b_N \cdot u(n-N) - \]

\[ [a_1 \cdot y(n-1) + a_2 \cdot y(n-2) + \ldots + a_N \cdot y(n-N)] \]

Image:

\[ \begin{array}{c}
H(z) = \text{Attributes:} \\
\end{array} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order ( N )</td>
<td>Order ( N ) of the transfer function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( b_0 \ldots b_N )</td>
<td>Coefficients of the numerator (from ( b_0 ) to ( b_N ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( a_0 \ldots a_N )</td>
<td>Coefficients of the denominator (from ( a_0 ) to ( a_N ))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

The following is a second-order transfer function:

\[ H(z) = \frac{400 \cdot 10^3}{z^2 + 1200 \cdot z + 400 \cdot 10^3} \]

Assuming a sampling frequency of 3 kHz, the specification will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order ( N )</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( b_0 \ldots b_N )</td>
<td>0.  0.  400.e3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. ( a_0 \ldots a_N )</td>
<td>1.  1200.  400.e3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>3000.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.5.3.1 Integrator

There are three types of integrators: regular integrator, external resettable integrator, and internal resettable integrator.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular Integrator</th>
<th>External Resettable Integrator</th>
<th>Internal Resettable Integrator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Regular Integrator" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="External Resettable Integrator" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Internal Resettable Integrator" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Algorithm Flag</td>
<td>Flag for integration algorithm 0: trapezoidal rule 1: backward Euler 2: forward Euler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Output Value</td>
<td>Initial output value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Flag</td>
<td>Reset flag (0: edge reset; 1: level reset) (for external resettable integrator only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Output Limit</td>
<td>Lower limit of the output (for internal resettable integrator only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Output Limit</td>
<td>Upper limit of the output (for internal resettable integrator only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The output of an external resettable integrator can be reset by an external control signal (at the bottom of the block). With the edge reset (reset flag = 0), the integrator output is reset to zero at the rising edge of the control signal. With the level reset (reset flag = 1), the integrator output is reset to zero as long as the control signal is high (1).

The output of an internal resettable integrator is reset to 0 whenever the output reaches either the lower limit or the upper limit. The integrator works in the same way as the external resettable integrator with the edge reset, except that users do not need to set up the external reset circuit in this case.

If we define $u(t)$ as the input, $y(t)$ as the output, $T_s$ as the sampling period, and $H(z)$ as the discrete transfer function, the input-output relationship of an integrator can be expressed under different integration algorithms as follows.

With trapezoidal rule:

$$H(z) = \frac{T_s}{2} \cdot \frac{z + 1}{z - 1}$$

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + \frac{T_s}{2} \cdot (u(n) + u(n-1))$$

With backward Euler:

$$H(z) = T_s \cdot \frac{z}{z - 1}$$

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + T_s \cdot u(n)$$

With forward Euler:

$$H(z) = T_s \cdot \frac{1}{z - 1}$$

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + T_s \cdot u(n-1)$$
5.5.3.2 Differentiator

The transfer function of a discrete differentiator is:

\[ H(z) = \frac{1}{T_s} \cdot \frac{z - 1}{z} \]

where \( T_s \) is the sampling period. The input-output relationship can be expressed in difference equation as:

\[ y(n) = \frac{1}{T_s} \cdot (u(n) - u(n - 1)) \]

5.5.3.3 Digital PI Controller

A digital PI controller is defined below.

The transfer function of an analog PI controller in s-domain is defined as:

\[ G(s) = k \cdot \frac{1 + sT}{sT} \]

The digital PI controller is obtained by discretizing the analog PI controller using the backward Euler method. The implementation of the controller is shown below:
5.5.3.4 Digital PID Controller with Reset

The digital PID controller with reset is defined below. Depending on the setting of the gains, the block can be used as a PI or PD controller.

**Image:**

![Digital PID Controller with Reset Diagram]

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportional Gain</td>
<td>Proportional loop gain Kp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integral Gain</td>
<td>Integral gain Ki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative Gain</td>
<td>Derivative gain Kd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integral Correction Gain</td>
<td>Integral correction gain Kc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Saturation</td>
<td>Maximum output limit, in per unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Saturation</td>
<td>Minimum output limit, in per unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the image, the input with "r" is for the reset signal. The other input, please note, is the error between the reference and the feedback. When the value of the input Reset is greater than 0.5, integral output is clamped to zero. This function is useful to prevent the integrator from entering saturation before the feedback signal is available.

In the PID controller, the differential equation is transformed to the difference equation by means of the backward Euler approximation.

The block diagram of this conventional PID controller with anti-windup correction is shown below.

![PID Controller Block Diagram]

Let the sampling period be $T_s$, the integral gain and derivative gain are defined as:

$$K_i = \frac{T_d}{T_i}$$

$$K_d = \frac{T_d}{T_s}$$
5.5.3.5 Digital Filters

Four digital filter blocks are provided: 1st-order low-pass filter, 2nd-order low-pass filter, general digital filter, and general finite impulse response (FIR) filter. For both general filters, the filter coefficients can either be entered directly through the element property window, or be specified through a text file.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st-order Low-Pass</th>
<th>2nd-order Low-Pass</th>
<th>General Digital Filter</th>
<th>FIR Filter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Attributes:

For 1st-order low-pass filter and 2nd-order low-pass filter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain $k$ of the filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off Frequency</td>
<td>Cut-off frequency $f_c$ ($f_c = \frac{\omega_c}{2\pi}$), in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damping Ratio</td>
<td>Damping ratio $\xi$ of the filter (for 2nd-order low-pass filter only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency $f_s$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For General Digital Filter or FIR Filter that reads the coefficients directly:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order $N$</td>
<td>Order $N$ of the transfer function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. $b_0...b_N$</td>
<td>Coefficients of the numerator (from $b_0$ to $b_N$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. $a_0...a_N$</td>
<td>Coefficients of the denominator (from $a_0$ to $a_N$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency $f_s$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For General Digital Filter or FIR Filter that reads the coefficients from a text file:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File for Coefficients</td>
<td>Name of the file storing the filter coefficients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency $f_s$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The transfer functions of the low-pass filters are listed below.

For first-order low-pass analog filter in s-domain:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{\omega_c}{s + \omega_c}$$

For second-order low-pass analog filter in s-domain:

$$G(s) = k \cdot \frac{\omega_c^2}{s^2 + 2\xi \omega_c s + \omega_c^2}$$

The 1st-order and 2nd-order digital filters are obtained by discretizing the analog filter using the Backward Euler method.

The transfer function of a general digital filter is expressed in polynomial form as:

$$H(z) = \frac{b_0 + b_1 \cdot z^{-1} + \ldots + b_{N-1} \cdot z^{-(N-1)} + b_N \cdot z^{-N}}{a_0 + a_1 \cdot z^{-1} + \ldots + a_{N-1} \cdot z^{-(N-1)} + a_N \cdot z^{-N}}$$
If \( a_0 = 1 \), the output \( y \) and input \( u \) can be expressed in difference equation form as:

\[
y(n) = b_0 \cdot u(n) + b_1 \cdot u(n-1) + \ldots + b_N \cdot u(n-N) - \\
[ a_1 \cdot y(n-1) + a_2 \cdot y(n-2) + \ldots + a_N \cdot y(n-N) ]
\]

If the denominator coefficients \( a_0..a_N \) are not zero, this type of filter is called infinite impulse response (IIR) filter.

The transfer function of a FIR filter is expressed in polynomial form as:

\[
H(z) = b_0 + b_1 \cdot z^{-1} + \ldots + b_{N-1} \cdot z^{-(N-1)} + b_N \cdot z^{-N}
\]

If \( a_0 = 1 \), the output \( y \) and input \( u \) can be expressed in difference equation form as:

\[
y(n) = b_0 \cdot u(n) + b_1 \cdot u(n-1) + \ldots + b_N \cdot u(n-N)
\]

The coefficient file for block Digital Filter (file) and FIR Filter (file) has the following format:

For FIR Filter (file):

\[
N \\
b_0 \\
b_1 \\
\ldots \ldots \ldots \\
b_N
\]

For Digital Filter (file), the format can be either one of the following:

\[
N \\
b_0 \\
b_1 \\
\ldots \ldots \ldots \\
b_N \\
a_0 \\
a_1 \\
\ldots \ldots \ldots \\
a_N
\]

Example:

To design a 2nd-order low-pass Butterworth digital filter with the cut-off frequency \( f_c = 1 \) kHz, assuming the sampling frequency \( f_s = 10 \) kHz, using MATLAB, we have:

Nyquist frequency \( f_n = f_s / 2 = 5 \) kHz

Normalized cut-off frequency \( f_c^* = f_c / f_n = 1 / 5 = 0.2 \)

\[ [B,A] = \text{butter}(2, f_c^*) \]

which will give:

\[ B = [0.0201 \ 0.0402 \ 0.0201] = [b_0 \ b_1 \ b_2] \]

\[ A = [1 \ -1.561 \ 0.6414] = [a_0 \ a_1 \ a_2] \]

The transfer function is:

\[
H(z) = \frac{0.0201 + 0.0402 \cdot z^{-1} + 0.0201 \cdot z^{-2}}{1 - 1.561 \cdot z^{-1} + 0.6414 \cdot z^{-2}}
\]

The input-output difference equation is:

\[
y(n) = 0.0201 \cdot u(n) + 0.0402 \cdot u(n-1) + 1.561 \cdot y(n-1) - 0.6414 \cdot y(n-2)
\]
The parameter specification of the filter in PSIM will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order $N$</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. $b_0...b_N$</td>
<td>0.0201 0.0402 0.0201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coeff. $a_0...a_N$</td>
<td>1. -1.561 0.6414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>10000.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the coefficients are stored in a file, the file content will be:

2
0.0201
0.0402
0.0201
1.
-1.561
0.6414

Or the file can also have the content as follows:

2
0.0201, 1
0.0402, -1.561
0.0201, 0.6414

### 5.5.4 Unit Delay

A unit delay block provides one sampling period delay to the input.

**Image:**

![Unit Delay Block](image)

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Output Value</td>
<td>Initial value of the output of the block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The difference between the unit delay block and the time delay block is that the unit delay block is a discrete element and it delays the sampled points by one sampling period, whereas the time delay block is a continuous element and it delays the whole waveform by the delay time specified.
5.5.5 Quantization Blocks

Quantization blocks simulate the quantization process of an A/D converter. Two quantization blocks are provided: One with 1 LSB (least significant bit) quantization error, and the other with input offset with 0.5 LSB quantization error.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantization Block</th>
<th>Quantization Block (with offset)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Bits</td>
<td>Number of bits $N$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{in_min}$</td>
<td>Lower limit of the input value $V_{in_min}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{in_max}$</td>
<td>Upper limit of the input value $V_{in_max}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{o_min}$</td>
<td>Lower limit of the output value $V_{o_min}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_{o_max}$</td>
<td>Output value $V_{o_max}$ that corresponds to the input value $V_{in_max}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To understand how the quantization blocks work, we will look at a special case where $N = 3$, $V_{in\_min} = 0$, and $V_{in\_max} = 1$. The input will be divided into $2^3$ (or 8) stages. Depending on the input level, the output will be one of the 3-bit discrete numbers 000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, and 111. The output will have $2^3$ (or 8) levels, and $2^2$-1 (or 7) steps. If the binary number 000 corresponds to the decimal number 0, and the binary number 111 corresponds to the decimal number 0.875, and $V_{o\_min} = 0$, and $V_{o\_max} = 1$, we can plot the waveforms of the input, output, and the quantization error $V_{in}\!-\!V_o$ of the two quantization blocks as below.
The waveforms on the left are from the quantization block without the offset, and the waveforms on the right are from the quantization block with the offset.

As shown from the waveforms on the left, the quantization error of the quantization block is from 0 to 1 LSB (least significant bit), or \(1/2^3\) (or 0.125).

For the quantization block with offset, a value of \(0.5\) LSB is added to the input before performing the quantization. This reduces the quantization error to -0.5 LSB to +0.5 LSB (except when the input is close to the maximum value), as shown from the waveforms on the right.

The figure below shows the input-output relationship of a general quantization block with offset.

The number of bits determines the quantization resolution. The input range, \(V_{in,max} - V_{in,min}\) is divided into \(2^N\)
stages, with the width of each stage as:

\[
\Delta V_{in} = \frac{V_{in,\text{max}} - V_{in,\text{min}}}{2^N}
\]

except for the 1st stage where the width is 0.5*ΔVin, and the last stage where the width is 1.5*ΔVin. Note that for the quantization block without the offset, the width of the 1st and last stage is ΔVin.

If the input falls in the \(k_{th}\) stage, the output will be calculated as:

\[
V_o = V_{o,\text{min}} + (k - 1) \cdot \Delta V_o
\]

where \(k\) is from 1 to \(2^N\), and the output step is calculated as:

\[
\Delta V_o = \frac{V_{o,\text{max}} - V_{o,\text{min}}}{2^N}
\]

Note that the value \(V_{o,\text{max}}\) corresponds to the output value when the input is at \(V_{in,\text{max}}\). But because of the quantization, the output can be represented in only \(N\) levels, from 0 to \(2^N-1\). As a result, the actual limit of the output is not \(V_{o,\text{max}}\), but \(V_{o,\text{max}} - \Delta V_o\), as shown in the figure above.

**Example:**

For a quantization block with the offset, let \(N = 3\), \(V_{in,\text{min}} = 0\), \(V_{in,\text{max}} = 1\), \(V_{o,\text{min}} = 0\), and \(V_{o,\text{min}} = 1\). We have \(\Delta V_{in} = \Delta V_o = 1/8\). If \(V_{in} = 0.25\), it is in the 3rd stage \((k = 3)\), and it corresponds to \(V_o = 0 + (3 - 1) \cdot 1/8 = 0.25\). If \(V_{in} = 0.6\), it is in the 6th stage \((k = 6)\), and it corresponds to \(V_o = 0 + (6 - 1) \cdot 1/8 = 0.625\).

### 5.5.6 Circular Buffers

A circular buffer is a memory location that can store an array of data. Two types of circular buffers are provided in PSIM: One with a single output, and the other with a vector output.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Circular Buffer (single output)</th>
<th>Circular Buffer (vector output)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Circular Buffer (single output)" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Circular Buffer (vector output)" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buffer Length</td>
<td>The length of the buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A circular buffer stores data in a buffer. When the pointer reaches the end of the buffer, it will start again from the beginning.

The circular buffer with single output is a type of first-in-first-out memory storage device, and the output is equal to the value being pushed out.

The output of the circular buffer with vector output is a vector array with the length equal to the buffer length. To access each memory location, use the memory read block.
Example:

If a circular buffer has a buffer length of 4 and a sampling frequency of 10 Hz, we have the buffer storage at different time as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Value at Memory Location</th>
<th>Output (for single-output buffer)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Value at Memory Location</th>
<th>Output (for single-output buffer)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5.7 Convolution Block

A convolution block performs the convolution of two input vectors. The output is also a vector.

Image:

Let the two input vectors be:

\[ A = [ a_m a_{m-1} a_{m-2} \ldots a_1 ] \]
\[ B = [ b_n b_{n-1} b_{n-2} \ldots b_1 ] \]

We have the convolution of \( A \) and \( B \) as:

\[ C = A \otimes B = [ c_{m+n-1} c_{m+n-2} \ldots c_1 ] \]

where

\[ c_i = \sum [ a_{k+1} \ast b_{j-k} ] \quad k=0, \ldots, m+n-1; \quad j=0, \ldots, m+n-1; \quad i=1, \ldots, m+n-1 \]

Example:

If \( A = [1 \ 2 \ 3] \) and \( B = [4 \ 5] \), we have \( m = 3; \ n = 2 \); and the convolution of \( A \) and \( B \) is: \( C = [4 \ 13 \ 22 \ 15] \).

5.5.8 Memory Read Block

A memory read block is used to read the value of a memory location of a vector.

Image:

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory Index Offset</td>
<td>Offset from the starting memory location</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A memory read block allows one to access the memory location of elements such as convolution block, vector array, and circular buffer. The index offset defines the offset from the starting memory location.
Example:

Let a vector be \( A = [2 \ 4 \ 6 \ 8] \). If index offset is 0, the memory read block output will be 2. If the index offset is 2, the output will be 6.

5.5.9 Data Array

This is a one-dimensional array. The output is a vector. The data are either entered directly (the element is called \textit{Array} in the PSIM library) or specified in a file (the element is called \textit{Array (file)} in the PSIM library).

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\vdots
\end{bmatrix} 
\]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Array Length</td>
<td>Length of the data array ( N ) (for the element \textit{Array} only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Values</td>
<td>Values of the array (for the element \textit{Array} only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File for Coefficients</td>
<td>Name of the file storing the array (for the element \textit{Array (file)} only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the array is read from a file, the file will have the following format:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N \\
\vdots \\
\vdots \\
\vdots \\
a_N \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( N \) is the length of the array, and \( a_1 a_N \) are the array values.

Example:

To define an array \( A = [2 \ 4 \ 6 \ 8] \), we will have: Array Length = 4; Values = 2 4 6 8. If the array is to be read from a file, the file will be:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
4 \\
2 \\
4 \\
6 \\
8 \\
\end{array}
\]

5.5.10 Stack

A stack is a first-in-last-out register.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
V_{in} \\
push \\
pop \\
\end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
2 \\
6 \\
\end{array} \rightarrow V_o
\]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stack Depth</td>
<td>Stack depth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rising edge triggers the push or pop action. When a pop action is performed and the stack is empty, the output remains unchanged. When a push action is performed and the stack is already full, the data at the bottom of the stack will be pushed out and will be lost.
5.5.11 Multi-Rate Sampling System

A discrete system can have more than one sampling rate. The following system is used to illustrate this.

The system below has 3 sections. The first section has a sampling rate of 10 Hz. The output, Vo, fed back to the system and is sampled at 4 Hz in the second section. In the third section, the output is displayed at a sampling rate of 2 Hz.

It should be noted that a zero-order hold must be used between two elements with different sampling rates.
5.6 **SimCoupler Module**

The SimCoupler Module is an add-on module to the PSIM software. It provides interface between PSIM and Matlab/Simulink for co-simulation. With the SimCoupler Module, part of a system can be implemented and simulated in PSIM, and the rest of the system in Simulink. One can make full use of PSIM’s capability in power simulation and Matlab/Simulink’s capability in control simulation in a complementary way.

For more details on how to use the SimCoupler Module, refer to the document "Tutorial - SimCoupler Module.pdf".

The SimCoupler interface consists of two parts: link nodes in PSIM, and the SimCoupler model block in Simulink. The images are shown below.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In PSIM</th>
<th>In Simulink</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="Image" alt="In Link Node" /></td>
<td><img src="Image" alt="Out Link Node" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In PSIM, the In Link nodes receive values from Simulink, and the Out Link nodes send the values to Simulink. They are all control elements and can be used in the control circuit only. In Simulink, the SimCoupler model block is connected to the rest of the system through input/output ports.

5.6.1 **Set-up in PSIM and Simulink**

Use of the SimCoupler Module is easy and straightforward. As an example, the following is a PMSM drive system with the power stage implemented in PSIM, and control in Simulink.

The following are the steps to set up SimCoupler for PSIM-Matlab/Simulink co-simulation for the example above.
Adding the SimCoupler Block to the Simulink Library:

Run the program "SetSimPath.exe" to add the SimCoupler block to the Simulink library and set up the SimCoupler Module for co-simulation of PSIM and Matlab/Simulink. After the execution, the SimCoupler block will appear as "S-function SimCoupler" in the Simulink Library Browser.

Note that this step is necessary, otherwise Simulink will not find PSIM.

Also, this program needs to run only once. It needs to be run again only if the PSIM folder or Matlab folder has changed.

In PSIM:

- After the rest of the power circuit is created, connect three Out Link nodes to the low-pass filters of Phase A, B, and C currents, and rename them as “Ia”, “Ib”, and “Ic”; and connect one Out Link node to the speed sensor output and rename it as “Wrpm”.

- Connect three In Link nodes to the positive inputs of the comparators, and rename them as “Va”, “Vb”, and “Vc”.

- Go to the Simulate menu, and select Arrange SLINK Nodes. A dialog window will appear. Arrange the order of the In Link nodes (SLINK In) and Out Link nodes (SLINK Out) to be the same as how the input/output ports would appear in the SimCoupler model block in Simulink (the order of the ports is from the top to the bottom). In this example, the order will be “Va”, “Vb”, and “Vc” for the In Link nodes, and “Ia”, “Ib”, “Ic”, and “Wrpm” for the Out Link nodes.

- Save the schematic file. In this example, we assume that the file is saved to “C:\PSIM\pmsm_psim.psimsch”.

In Simulink:

- Start Matlab.

- Launch Simulink. Open an existing file or create a new file. After the rest of the system is created, go to the menu "S-function SimCoupler” in the Simulink Library Browser, select the SimCoupler block, and place it on the schematic.

- In the Simulink schematic, double click on the SimCoupler block, and click on the Browser button to locate and select the PSIM schematic file “C:\PSIM\pmsm_psim.psimsch”. Then click on Apply. The number of input and output ports of the SimCoupler model block will automatically match those defined in the PSIM netlist. In this case, there will be 3 input ports and 4 output ports.

- Go to Simulation >> Model Configuration Parameters. Under Solver Options, set the Type to “Fixed-step”. Set Fixed step size to be the same as or close to PSIM’s time step. In this case, the time step is set to 0.1ms. More discussion on the selection of the solver option and the time step is given in the next section.

- The setup is now complete. In Simulink, start the simulation.

The SimCoupler Module supports Matlab/Simulink Release 13 and higher.

Please note that when the SimCoupler model block is used in a feedback system in Simulink, the SimCoupler model block may be part of an algebraic loop (please refer to Matlab Help for more information on algebraic loops). Some versions of Matlab/Simulink can not solve a system containing algebraic loops, and other can solve the system but with degraded performance. To break an algebraic loop, place a memory block at each output of the SimCoupler model block. The memory block introduces one integration time step delay.

5.6.2 Solver Type and Time Step Selection in Simulink

There are certain restrictions on the selection of the solver type and the time step in Simulink when performing the co-simulation. To illustrate this, we use the following one-quadrant chopper circuit with average current mode control as an example.

The circuit on the left is all implemented and simulated in PSIM. The circuit on the right has the power stage implemented in PSIM, and the control implemented in Simulink. In both circuits, the PSIM time step is 2 us.
There are different ways of setting up Simulink to perform co-simulation. The recommend approach is to set the Solve Type to **Fixed-step** and define the **Fixed step size** to be the same or close to PSIM’s time step. The figure below shows this option.

It is recommended that Simulink use the same time step as PSIM, although we have found that, even if the Simulink time step is slightly larger than PSIM time step, satisfactory results are obtained. In this case, for example, the time step is set to 20 us, 10 times larger than the PSIM time step.

If the Simulink Solver type is instead set to **Variable-step**, the simulation results will not be correct. The figure below shows this option.

When the Simulink Solver type is set to **Variable-step**, in order to obtain correct results, a zero-order-hold must be placed at the input of the SimCoupler model block. Moreover, the zero-order-hold sample time must be the same or close to PSIM time step. The figure below shows the configuration.
Therefore, Simulink must be set up to have the Solver Type as **Fixed-step** with the time step the same or close to the PSIM time step, or if the Solver Type is **Variable-step**, a zero-order-hold must be used with the sample time the same or close to PSIM time step.

### 5.6.3 Passing Parameters from Simulink to PSIM

One can set parameter values in Simulink, and pass them to PSIM. For example, to set the inductance of the inductor L1 in Simulink, change the "Inductance" to `varL1` in PSIM, as shown below.

In Simulink, double click on the SimCoupler block to open the property dialog, and click on **Add Variable**. Click on the newly added row in the list and type the variable name and value, as shown below.

The variable `varL1` will now be accessible from PSIM.
5.7 CosiMate Links

CosiMate links provide the link between PSIM and CosiMate, a co-simulation platform that supports various software. Through the links, one can perform co-simulation between PSIM and the software that CosiMate supports. For more information on CosiMate, please visit www.chiastek.com.

The links consist of two parts: Input Port and Output Port. An input port represents a control signal input from CosiMate to PSIM, and an output port represents a control signal output from PSIM to CosiMate. During co-simulation, data are exchanged between PSIM and other software through these ports.

Note that the links will be functional only if one has CosiMate installed. For more details on how to set up the links, please refer to relevant CosiMate documents.

5.8 Design Suite Blocks

This section contains blocks that consist of basic power and control elements for specific motor drive system applications.

The following control blocks are provided:
- Torque Control (PMSM)
- Dynamic Torque Limit Control (PMSM)
- Voltage Control (PMSM)
- DC-DC Charging Control
- DC-DC Discharging Control
- DC-DC Regeneration Control

These blocks are part of the HEV Design Suite.

5.8.1 Torque Control (PMSM)

The Torque Control (PMSM) block is for linear PMSM machines only. It is defined as follow.

Image:

```
Torque Control
\[ \begin{align*}
.arrow[<->]{Id \quad Is} \\
.arrow[<->]{Iq} \\
.arrow[<->]{Te \quad Tes}
\end{align*}
```

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ld (d-axis inductance)</td>
<td>d-axis inductance of the machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lq (q-axis inductance)</td>
<td>q-axis inductance of the machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpk / krpm</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant of the machine, in V/krpm (mechanical speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrator Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the torque loop integrator controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Torque</td>
<td>Maximum motor torque, in Nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>Base current value of the system, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Torque Value</td>
<td>Base torque value, in Nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the torque loop integrator controller, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The torque control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- **Id**: d-axis current feedback
- **Iq**: q-axis current feedback
- **Te**: Torque reference
- **Is**: Current amplitude reference
- **Tes**: Estimated torque developed by the motor

This block estimates the motor developed torque from the current feedback and motor parameters. A control loop based on a discrete integrator is used to regulate the motor torque and generate the motor current reference. The block requires the parameters of the PMSM controlled and the inverter current rating.

### 5.8.2 Dynamic Torque Limit Control (PMSM)

The Dynamic Torque Limit Control (PMSM) block is for linear PMSM machines only.

**Image:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ld (d-axis inductance)</td>
<td>d-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lq (q-axis inductance)</td>
<td>q-axis inductance of the PMSM machine, in H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpk / krpm</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant of the machine, in V/krpm (mechanical speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Torque</td>
<td>Maximum motor torque, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Speed (rpm)</td>
<td>Maximum motor speed, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Power</td>
<td>Maximum motor power, in W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>Base voltage value for the per unit system, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>Base current value for the per unit system, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Mechanical Speed</td>
<td>Base mechanical speed for the per unit system, in rad/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Torque Value</td>
<td>Base torque value for the per unit system, in N*m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The torque control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- **Id**: d-axis current feedback
- **Iq**: q-axis current feedback
- **Vdc**: DC bus voltage feedback
- **Wm**: Motor mechanical speed, in rad/sec.
- **Tcmd**: Torque command
- **Te**: Torque reference
- **nmb**: Calculated speed limit of the maximum torque region, in rpm
- **FW**: Flag of field weakening (1: in field weakening; 0: not in field weakening)

This block calculates the speed limit of the maximum torque region. When the motor speed is less than this
speed limit, the motor operates in the maximum torque region. Otherwise, it operates in the maximum power region with field weakening control where the inverter voltage amplitude is the limiting factor.

The block requires the parameters of the PMSM controlled and the inverter voltage rating.

When base values are all 1, all input and output quantities are in real values.

Note that this block assumes that the inverter connected to the motor is a 6-pulse inverter with space vector PWM. The maximum value of the ac phase-to-neutral voltage (peak) is calculated as:

\[
V_{\text{ph, max}} = \frac{V_{\text{dc}}}{\sqrt{3}}
\]

Internally, a safety factor of 0.9 is used when determining the threshold to transition to field weakening. To remove this factor, divide the dc voltage voltage by 0.9 before the Vdc input port.

5.8.3 Dynamic Torque Limit Control (Nonlinear PMSM)

The Dynamic Torque Limit Control (Nonlinear PMSM) block is for nonlinear PMSM machines only.

![Image of Dynamic Torque Limit Control Block]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter Cut-Off Frequency</td>
<td>Cut-off frequency $f_c$ of the internal low-pass filter, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Torque</td>
<td>Maximum motor torque, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Speed</td>
<td>Maximum motor speed, in rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Power</td>
<td>Maximum motor power, in W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Voltage Value</td>
<td>Base voltage value for the per unit system, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Current Value</td>
<td>Base current value for the per unit system, in A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Mechanical Speed</td>
<td>Base mechanical speed for the per unit system, in rad/sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Torque Value</td>
<td>Base torque value for the per unit system, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the internal low-pass filter, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dynamic torque limit control block is for the control of nonlinear PMSM machines only. It has the following inputs and outputs, all in per unit value except $L_d$, $L_q$, and $\Lambda$. When base values $V_b$, $I_b$, and $W_{mb}$ are all 1, all input and output quantities are in real values.

Input Signals:
- $I_d$: d-axis current feedback
- $I_q$: q-axis current feedback
- $L_d$: d-axis inductance $L_d$, in H
- $L_q$: q-axis inductance $L_q$, in H
Lambda: Peak stator phase flux linkage, in Weber
Vdc: DC bus voltage feedback
Wm: Motor mechanical speed
Tcmd: Torque reference input

Output Signals:
Te: Torque reference output
Wm_th: Calculated threshold speed of the constant torque region
FW: Flag of field weakening (1: in field weakening; 0: not in field weakening)

This block calculates the threshold speed of the constant torque region. When the motor speed is less than this speed, the motor operates in the constant torque region. Otherwise, it operates in the constant power region with field weakening control where the inverter voltage amplitude is the limiting factor.

A second-order low-pass digital filter, with a cut-off frequency of fc and a damping ratio of 0.7, is used to smooth out the change of the calculated threshold speed.

When base values are all 1, all input and output quantities are in real values.

Note that this block assumes that the inverter connected to the motor is a 6-pulse inverter with space vector PWM. The maximum value of the ac phase-to-neutral voltage (peak) is calculated as:

\[ V_{\text{ph,max}} = \frac{V_{dc}}{\sqrt{3}} \]

Internally, a safety factor of 0.9 is used when determining the threshold to transition to field weakening. To remove this factor, divide the dc voltage voltage by 0.9 before the Vdc input port.

5.8.4 Voltage Control (PMSM)

The Voltage Control block is for linear PMSM machines only.

![Voltage Control Diagram](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vpk / krpm</td>
<td>Peak line-to-line back emf constant of the machine, in V/krpm (mechanical speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Poles</td>
<td>Number of poles of the machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Motor Torque</td>
<td>Maximum motor torque, in N*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells Np in parallel in the battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the voltage loop PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant of the voltage loop PI controller, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the voltage PI controller, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The voltage control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- **Vdc***: DC bus voltage reference
- **Vdc**: DC bus voltage feedback
Idc: DC bus current feedback
Wm: Motor mechanical speed in rad/sec.
Is: Current amplitude reference

This block uses a digital PI controller to regulate the dc bus voltage. Together with the dc bus current and the machine speed, it generates the machine current reference.

The block requires the parameters of the PMSM machine controlled.

### 5.8.5 DC-DC Charging Control

The DC-DC Charging Control block is defined as below.

**Image:**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Charging Control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vbatt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibatt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Converter Rated Power</td>
<td>Rated power of the dc-dc converter, in W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery-side Rated Voltage</td>
<td>Converter rated voltage on the battery side, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells in Series</td>
<td>Number of cells Ns in series in the battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cells in Parallel</td>
<td>Number of cells Np in parallel in the battery pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage Derating Factor</td>
<td>Voltage derating factor Ks, from 0 (100% derating) to 1 (no derating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Battery Voltage</td>
<td>Full (or maximum) voltage of the battery cell, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Resistance</td>
<td>Internal resistance of the battery cell, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current PI Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the current loop PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current PI Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant of the current loop PI controller, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage PI Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the voltage loop PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage PI Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant of the voltage loop PI controller, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control Block Output Limit</td>
<td>The upper limit of the control block output Vm. The lower limit is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the voltage and current PI controller, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dc-dc charging control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- Vbatt: Battery-side voltage
- Ibatt: Current flowing into the battery
- Vm: Modulation signal output

This block implements constant-voltage-constant-current charging control to a battery. When the battery terminal voltage is less than the battery float voltage (the float voltage is defined as the internal battery full voltage plus the voltage drop across the battery resistance), it is constant current charging, in which case the voltage is disabled and the current loop changes the battery at a constant current rate. The charging current amplitude is set to the converter rated current on the battery side.

On the other hand, when the battery terminal voltage reaches the float voltage, it is constant voltage charging.
The voltage loop generates the reference for the current loop.
Digital PI controllers are used in the voltage and current loops.

5.8.6 DC-DC Discharging Control
The DC-DC Discharging Control block is defined as below.

Image:

![Image of DC-DC Discharging Control block]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current/Voltage Mode</td>
<td>Operation mode of the discharge control (0: current mode; 1: voltage mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Converter Rated Power</td>
<td>Rated power of the dc-dc converter, in W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery-side Rated Voltage</td>
<td>Converter rated voltage on the battery side, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Bus Voltage Reference</td>
<td>DC bus voltage reference, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current PI Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the current loop PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current PI Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant of the current loop PI controller, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage PI Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the voltage loop PI controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage PI Time Constant</td>
<td>Time constant of the voltage loop PI controller, in sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control Block Output Limit</td>
<td>The upper limit of the control block output Vm. The lower limit is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the voltage and current PI controller, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dc-dc discharging control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- Vdc: DC bus voltage feedback
- Ibatt: Current flowing into the battery
- Vm: Modulation signal output

This block implements constant-voltage or constant-current discharging control to a battery. When the operation mode is set to Voltage Mode (1), the converter regulates the dc bus voltage, and the voltage loop generates the reference for the current loop. When the operation mode is set to Current Mode (0), the converter regulates the current flowing into the dc bus to the maximum current that the converter can deliver.

Digital PI controllers are used in the voltage and current loops.
5.8.7 DC-DC Regeneration Control

The DC-DC Regeneration Control block is defined as below.

**Image:**

![Regeneration Control Block Diagram](image)

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regen Power Threshold</td>
<td>Threshold of the motor power level. Beyond the threshold, regeneration is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regen Enable Time</td>
<td>Time from which regeneration is enabled. Before this time, regeneration is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling Frequency</td>
<td>Sampling frequency of the low-pass filter for speed feedback, in Hz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dc-dc regeneration control block has the following inputs and outputs:

- Vdc: DC bus voltage feedback
- Tes: Estimated developed torque of the traction motor
- Wm: Mechanical speed of the traction motor in rad/sec.
- Rgn: Regeneration flag (0: no regeneration; 1: regeneration)

This block generates a regeneration flag based on the dc bus voltage and the traction motor power. When the motor power is negative (in generation mode) and the power amplitude exceeds the threshold, the regeneration flag is set to 1 to enable regeneration.

To avoid false triggering due to start-up transient, a regeneration enable time is defined. Regeneration is possible only after this time has passed.
This chapter provides descriptions for the components in PSIM element library’s Other section.

6.1 Switch Controllers

A switch controller has the same function as a switch gate/base drive circuit in an actual circuit. It receives the input from the control circuit, and controls switches in the power circuit. One switch controller can control multiple switches simultaneously.

6.1.1 On-Off Switch Controller

An on-off switch controller is used as the interface between a control gating signal and a power switch. The input, which is a logic signal (either 0 or 1) from the control circuit, is passed to the power circuit as the gating signal.

Example:

The circuit below implements the step change of a load. In the circuit, the on-off switch controller is used to control the bi-directional switch. The step voltage source, which is connected to the controller input, changes from 0 to 1 at the time of 12 ms. The closure of the switch results in the short-circuit of the resistor across the switch and the increase of the current.

6.1.2 On-Off Switch Controller (Multi-Level)

An on-off switch controller (multi-level) is used to control a multi-level switch such as MOSFET or IGBT. Depending on the input/output (I/O) signal type, this element can connect a control signal to an ideal switch or to a switch model (such as Level-1 or Level-2 or SPICE model). Similarly, this element can connect a power circuit to an ideal switch or to a switch model.

The image is different depending on the I/O signal type. There are four I/O signal types:

- Control to ideal switch: Input is control signal (0/1) and the output is the gate node of an ideal switch
- Control to model: Input is control signal and outputs are transistor gate node and source node
- Power to ideal switch: Inputs are power circuit and the output is the gate node of an ideal switch
- Power to model: Inputs are power circuit and outputs are transistor gate node and source node
6.1.3 Alpha Controller

An alpha controller is used for delay angle control of thyristor switches or bridges. There are three input for the controller: the alpha value, the synchronization signal, and the gating enable/disable signal. The transition of the synchronization signal from low to high (from 0 to 1) provides the synchronization and this corresponds to the moment when the delay angle alpha equals zero. A gating with a delay of alpha degrees is generated and sent to the thyristors. The alpha value is updated instantaneously.

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/O Signal Type</td>
<td>It is set to Control to model.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Voltage High</td>
<td>The high level of the gate voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Voltage Low</td>
<td>The low level of the gate voltage, in V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Resistance</td>
<td>Gate resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Current Flag</td>
<td>Flag for gate current display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/O Signal Type</td>
<td>It is set to Power to ideal switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gate Threshold Voltage</td>
<td>When the input voltage is above the gate threshold voltage, the output is 1. Otherwise, the output is 0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The input for the delay angle alpha is in deg.

**Example:**

The figure below shows a thyristor circuit using delay angle control. In the circuit, the zero-crossing of $v_s$, which corresponds to the moment that the thyristor would start conducting naturally, is used to provide the synchronization. The delay angle is set at 30°. The gating signal is delayed from the rising edge of the synchronization signal by 30°.
6.1.4 PWM Lookup Table Controller

There are four input signals in a PWM lookup table controller: the modulation index, the delay angle, the synchronization signal, and the gating enable/disable signal. The gating pattern is selected based on the modulation index. The synchronization signal provides the synchronization to the gating pattern. The gating pattern is updated when the synchronization signal changes from low to high. The delay angle defines the relative angle between the gating pattern and the synchronization signal. For example, if the delay angle is 10 deg., the gating pattern will be leading the synchronization signal by 10 deg.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Switching frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Angle</td>
<td>Update angle, in deg., based on which the gatings are internally updated. If the angle is 360°, the gatings are updated at every cycle. If it is 60°, the gatings are updated at every 60°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>Name of the file storing the PWM gating pattern</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A lookup table, which is stored in a file, contains the gating patterns. It has the following format:

\[
\begin{align*}
 n, & m_1, m_2, \ldots, m_n \\
 k_1 & \quad G_{1,1}, G_{1,2}, \ldots, G_{1,k_1} \\
 \ldots & \quad \ldots \\
 k_n & \quad G_{n,1}, G_{n,2}, \ldots, G_{n,k_n}
\end{align*}
\]

where \( n \) is the number of gating patterns; \( m_i \) is the modulation index correspondent to Pattern \( i \); and \( k_i \) is the number of switching points in Pattern \( i \). The modulation index array \( m_1 \) to \( m_n \) should be monotonically increasing. The output will select the \( i_{th} \) pattern if the input is smaller than or equal to \( m_i \). If the input exceeds \( m_n \), the last pattern will be selected.

The table below shows a sample PWM pattern file with 4 modulation index levels and 14 switching points.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Switching frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Angle</td>
<td>Update angle, in deg., based on which the gatings are internally updated. If the angle is 360°, the gatings are updated at every cycle. If it is 60°, the gatings are updated at every 60°.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Name</td>
<td>Name of the file storing the PWM gating pattern</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4, 0.901, 0.910253, 0.920214, 1.199442
In this example, if the modulation index input is 0.8, the controller will select the first gating pattern. If the modulation index is 0.915, the controller will select the third pattern.

6.2 Sensors

Voltage/current sensors measure the voltages/currents of the power circuit and send them to the control circuit. The current sensor has an internal resistance of 1 $\mu\Omega$.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage Sensor</th>
<th>Current Sensor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Voltage Sensor Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Current Sensor Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the dot indicates the positive terminal.

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the sensor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Probes, Meters, and Scopes

Probes and meters are used to measure voltages, currents, power, or other quantities, while scopes are used to display voltage and current waveforms.

6.3.1 Probes and Meters

Below find the images of the ac ammeter, dc ammeter, voltage probe, current probe, ac voltmeter, dc voltmeter, single-phase and 3-phase wattmeters and kilowatt hour (kWh) meters, VAR meters, and VA-Power Factor meters. A voltage probe measures a node voltage with respect to ground. A two-terminal voltage probe measures the voltage between two nodes. A current probe or meter measures the current flowing into the meter from the dotted side. Similarly, a power meter measures the power flowing into the meter from the dotted side. Note that all the probes and meters, except the node-to-ground probe, are allowed in the power circuit only.

While voltage/current probes measure the instantaneous voltage or current, meters measure the dc or ac quantities. A small resistor of 1 $\mu\Omega$ is used in the current probe internally to measure the current.
In the images for the single-phase/3-phase wattmeter / kWh meter, the node with the letter "W" is for the real power output, in watt, and the node with the letter "kWh" is for the kilowatt hour output, in kilowatt-hour.

A low-pass filter is used in the dc meter and wattmeter models to filter out high-frequency components, whereas a high-pass filter is used in the ac meter models to filter out the dc component. The cut-off frequency determines the transient response of the filter.

Except the voltage and current probes, the readings of all the meters are meaningful only when the readings reach the steady state.

The single-phase and 3-phase VAR meter measure the reactive power (VAR) at the fundamental frequency; and the VA-Power Factor meters measure the apparent power (VA), the total power factor (PF), and the displacement power factor (DPF). The kilowatt hour meter reading gives the integration of the real power over a time interval defined by the start time and the stop time.

For a single-phase circuit, the real power $P$, reactive power $Q$, apparent power $S$, total power factor $PF$, and the displacement power factor $DPF$ are defined as follows.

Assume both the voltage and current contains harmonics, i.e.

$$v(t) = \sqrt{2}V_1\sin(\omega_1t + \phi_1) + \sqrt{2}V_2\sin(\omega_2t + \phi_2) + ...$$

$$i(t) = \sqrt{2}I_1\sin(\omega_1t + \theta_1) + \sqrt{2}I_2\sin(\omega_2t + \theta_2) + ...$$

where $\omega_1$ is the fundamental frequency and all others are harmonic frequencies. We have the rms values of the
voltage and current as:

\[ V_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{V_1^2 + V_2^2 + \ldots} \]
\[ I_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{I_1^2 + I_2^2 + \ldots} \]

The real power (or average power) \( P \) is defined as:

\[ P = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T (v(t) \cdot i(t)) \, dt \]

where \( T \) is the fundamental period.

The reactive power \( Q \) is defined as:

\[ Q = V_1 \cdot I_1 \cdot \sin(\phi_1 - \theta_1) \]

Note that the reactive power is for the fundamental component only.

The apparent power \( S \) is defined as:

\[ S = V_{\text{rms}} \cdot I_{\text{rms}} \]

The total power factor \( PF \) and the displacement power factor \( DPF \) are then defined as follow:

\[ PF = \frac{P}{S} \]
\[ DPF = \cos(\phi_1 - \theta_1) \]

For the 3-phase circuit, the definitions are similar.

Note that all the 3-phase meters, including 3-phase wattmeter/kWh meter, VAR meter, VA-Power Factor meter, are for 3-phase 3-wire circuit only, and cannot be used in 3-phase 4-wire circuit. The models of the meters are based on the assumption that the summation of 3-phase voltages and currents must be equal to zero, that is:

\[ v_a + v_b + v_c = 0 \]
\[ i_a + i_b + i_c = 0 \]

For 3-phase 4-wire circuit, single-phase meters should be used instead.

To use the single-phase or 3-phase wattmeter/VAR meters, insert the meters into the circuit.

**Example:**

This example shows how single-phase and 3-phase meters are used. The circuit on the left shows the use of the wattmeter and VAR meter, and the circuit on the right shows the use of the three-phase wattmeter and VAR meter.
### 6.3.2 Voltage/Current Scopes

While voltage/current probes and meters save the simulation results for post waveform processing, voltage/current scopes allow users to view simulation waveforms at runtime in the middle of the simulation.

These scopes are provided: 1-channel voltage scope, 2-channel voltage scope, 4-channel voltage scope, and current scope.

Below are the images of the voltage and current scopes and their expanded view.

The 1-channel and 4-channel voltage scope and the current scope have the same interface. For the 4-channel scope, the channel can be selected through the drop-down channel selection, and the settings apply that the channel selected.

The scope is designed to operate in a similar way as the actual oscilloscope in the lab. It has 3 main sections: **Timebase** section, **Channel** section, and **Trigger** section.

In the **Timebase** section, the scale of time (x axis) is defined.

In the **Channel** section, the scale of the Y axis, as well as the offset and the color of the waveform, are defined. The channel display mode can be either **DC**, **AC**, or **Gnd** (for ground). When the display mode is in **DC**, the entire waveform is displayed. If the display mode is in **AC**, only the ac portion of the waveform is displayed. When the display mode is **Gnd**, the waveform will show 0.

In the **Trigger** section, the trigger conditions are defined. The trigger can be set to either **ON** or **OFF**. When the trigger is off, the waveform is free-running, and the display of the waveform in the scope may vary from one frame to another. If the trigger is on, the waveform display will only start when the trigger conditions are met. This will lead to a steady waveform display.

There are three trigger modes: rising-edge triggering, falling-edge triggering, and one-shot triggering (if the **once** checkbox is checked, the one-shot triggering is selected). The one-shot triggering will trigger only once, and it is useful, for example, in situations where a transient needs to be captured.

The trigger level sets the level at which the triggering occurs. For example, if Channel A is selected with the rising-edge triggering and the trigger level of 0V, whenever the Channel A input crosses over 0 from negative to positive, triggering will occur and the waveform display will start from that instant.

On the scope, if the **Auto scale** checkbox is checked, the scale of all the channels will be automatically adjusted so that the waveforms are within the display of the scope.
Note that voltage scopes have connecting terminals which can be connected to either power circuit nodes or control circuit nodes. The scopes will display the node-to-ground voltages at these nodes.

The current scope, on the other hand, has no connecting terminals. It is associated with any element that has the parameter of the current flag, and it is enabled by right clicking on top of the element, and selecting the branch current under the *Current Scopes*, as shown below. After the branch current is selected, a check mark will appear in front of the branch current name.

If the element has multiple current flags, under the *Current Scopes* menu, there will be multiply branch currents, one corresponding to each current flag.

For example, for a 3-phase resistor R1, under the *Current Scopes* menu, there will be three branch currents: I(R1) A, I(R1) B, and I(R1) C. The letter "A", "B", and "C" refer to Channel A, B, and C, respectively. For example, if "I(R1) A", "I(R1) B", and "I(R1) C" are all selected, in the current scope, one can go to the *Channel* pull-down menu in the *Channel* section, and select one of the channels for display. If Channel A is selected, the scope will show the Phase A branch current I(R1).

### 6.4 Function Blocks

#### 6.4.1 Control-Power Interface Block

A control-to-power interface block passes a control circuit value to the power circuit. It is used as a buffer between the control and power circuit. The output of the interface block is treated as a voltage source when the power circuit is solved. With this block, some of the functions that can only be generated in the control circuit can be passed to the power circuit.

**Image:**

---

**Example: A Constant-Power Load Model**

In a constant-power dc load, the voltage $V$, current $I$, and power $P$ have the relationship as $P=V*I$. Given the voltage and the power, the current can be calculated as $I=P/V$. This can be implemented using the circuit as shown below.

The load voltage is measured through a voltage sensor and is fed to a divider. The output of the divider gives the current value $I$. Since the voltage could be zero or a low value at the initial stage, a limiter is used to limit the current amplitude. This value is converted into the load current quantity through a voltage-controlled current...
Example:
The following circuit illustrates how a control circuit signal can be passed to the power circuit. As seen from the power circuit, the CTOP block behaves as a grounded voltage source.

6.4.2 Transformation Blocks
Function blocks of the following transformations are provided:
- abc-dqo transformation
- abc-αβ transformation
- αβ-dq transformation
- Cartesian-polar transformation

All these blocks can be used in either power circuit or control circuit.

6.4.2.1 abc-dqo Transformation
The abc-dqo function blocks perform the transformation between the abc coordinate and the dqo coordinate. The transformation is often referred to as the Park transformation.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transformation Flag</td>
<td>Transformation flag (0: The q-axis leads the d-axis; 1: The q-axis lags the d-axis)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The angle θ at the bottom of the blocks is in rad.

It should be noted that, in power circuit, currents must first be converted into voltage quantities (using current-controlled voltage sources) before they can be transformed. Also, if an input terminal is not used (such as in the
dqo-to-abc transformation block where only Phase d and q are not used, and Phase o is not used), it must be connected to ground.

Depending on the transformation flag, the transformation equations are as follows.

From abc to dqo, with the transformation flag set to 0:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
v_q \\
v_o
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{3} \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & \cos \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\
    -\sin \theta & -\sin \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\
    \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2}
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From abc to dqo, with the transformation flag set to 1:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
v_q \\
v_o
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{3} \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & \cos \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\
    \sin \theta & \sin \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) \\
    \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2}
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Note that the coefficient 2/3 in front of the transformation matrix means that the transformation is amplitude invariant, not power invariant. That is, the dq vector amplitude is equal to the peak amplitude of the three-phase sinusoidal waveforms. But the power in the dq frame must be multiplied by 3/2 to have the same power, i.e. \( \text{Power} = v_a \cdot i_d + v_b \cdot i_b + v_c \cdot i_c = \frac{3}{2} \cdot (v_a \cdot i_d + v_q \cdot i_q) \). To have the power invariant transformation, replace 2/3 with \( \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \), and 1/2 with \( \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \).

From dqo to abc, with the transformation flag set to 0:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & -\sin \theta & 1 \\
    \cos \left( \theta - \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & -\sin \left( \theta - \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & 1 \\
    \cos \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & -\sin \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & 1
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
v_q \\
v_o
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From dqo to abc, with the transformation flag set to 1:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & \sin \theta & 1 \\
    \cos \left( \theta - \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & \sin \left( \theta - \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & 1 \\
    \cos \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & \sin \left( \theta + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right) & 1
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
v_q \\
v_o
\end{bmatrix}
\]

**Example:**

In this example, three symmetrical ac waveforms are transformed into dqo quantities. The angle \( \theta \) is defined as \( \theta = \omega t \) where \( \omega = 2\pi \times 60 \). Since the angle \( \theta \) changes linearly with time, a piecewise linear voltage which has a ramp waveform is used to represent \( \theta \). The simulation waveforms show the three-phase ac (top), the angle \( \theta \) (middle), and the dqo output. In this example, the “q” component is constant, and both the “d” and the “o” components are zero.
6.4.2.2 abc-$\alpha\beta$ Transformation

The abc-$\alpha\beta$ function blocks perform the transformation between the abc coordinate and the $\alpha\beta$ coordinate. It is often referred to as the Clarke transformation.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abc to $\alpha\beta$</th>
<th>ab to $\alpha\beta$</th>
<th>ac to $\alpha\beta$</th>
<th>$\alpha\beta$ to abc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( a ) ( \rightarrow ) ( a )</td>
<td>( a ) ( \rightarrow ) ( a )</td>
<td>( a ) ( \rightarrow ) ( a )</td>
<td>( a ) ( \rightarrow ) ( a )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( b ) ( \rightarrow ) ( b )</td>
<td>( b ) ( \rightarrow ) ( b )</td>
<td>( b ) ( \rightarrow ) ( b )</td>
<td>( b ) ( \rightarrow ) ( b )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( c ) ( \rightarrow ) ( c )</td>
<td>( c ) ( \rightarrow ) ( c )</td>
<td>( c ) ( \rightarrow ) ( c )</td>
<td>( c ) ( \rightarrow ) ( c )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the letter "al" refers to $\alpha$, and the letter "be" refers to $\beta$. The transformation equations are:

From abc to $\alpha\beta$:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\
0 & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\
\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2}
\end{bmatrix} \cdot
\begin{bmatrix}
v_d \\
v_e \\
v_f
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From ab to $\alpha\beta$:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
v_a \\
v_b
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{3}{2} & 0 \\
\sqrt{2} & \sqrt{2}
\end{bmatrix} \cdot
\begin{bmatrix}
v_d \\
v_e
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From ac to $\alpha\beta$:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix}
\frac{3}{2} & 0 \\
\sqrt{2} & -\sqrt{2}
\end{bmatrix} \cdot
\begin{bmatrix}
v_d \\
v_e
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From $\alpha\beta$ to abc:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
v_a \\
v_b \\
v_c
\end{bmatrix} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 \\
\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\
\frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}
\end{bmatrix} \cdot
\begin{bmatrix}
v_d \\
v_e
\end{bmatrix}
\]

For the ab-to-$\alpha\beta$ and ac-to-$\alpha\beta$ transformation, it is assumed that $v_a + v_b + v_c = 0$. 

Chapter 6: Other Components
### 6.4.2.3 \( \alpha\beta\)-dq Transformation

The \( \alpha\beta\)-dq function blocks perform the transformation from \( \alpha\beta\) to dq coordinate which is often referred as Park Transformation. The dq-\( \alpha\beta\) function blocks perform the transformation from dq to \( \alpha\beta\) coordinate which is often referred as Inverse Park Transformation.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( \alpha\beta ) to dq (Park)</th>
<th>dq to ( \alpha\beta ) (Inverse Park)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the letter "al" refers to \( \alpha \), and the letter "be" refers to \( \beta \). The phase angle input can be either \( \theta \) in radian or \( \sin(\theta) \) and \( \cos(\theta) \).

The transformation equations are:

From \( \alpha\beta \) to dq:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
    v_q 
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\
    -\sin \theta & \cos \theta 
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_\alpha \\
    v_\beta 
\end{bmatrix}
\]

From dq to \( \alpha\beta \):

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
    v_\alpha \\
    v_\beta 
\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}
    \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\
    \sin \theta & \cos \theta 
\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}
    v_d \\
    v_q 
\end{bmatrix}
\]

### 6.4.2.4 Cartesian-Polar Transformation

The Cartesian-polar function blocks perform the transformation between the Cartesian coordinate and the polar coordinate.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cartesian to polar</th>
<th>Polar to Cartesian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the images, the letter "r" refers to the amplitude, and "a" refers to the phase angle \( \theta \), in rad.

The transformation equations are:

From Cartesian to polar:

\[
\begin{align*}
    r &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \\
    \theta &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)
\end{align*}
\]

From polar to Cartesian:

\[
\begin{align*}
    x &= r \cdot \cos \theta \\
    y &= r \cdot \sin \theta
\end{align*}
\]
6.4.3 Math Function Blocks

The output of a math function block is expressed as the mathematical function of the inputs. With this block, one can implement complex and nonlinear relationship easily. Blocks with 1, 2, 3, 5, and 10 inputs are provided.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1-input</th>
<th>2-input</th>
<th>3-input</th>
<th>5-input</th>
<th>10-input</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression ( f(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) )</td>
<td>Expression of the output versus inputs where ( n ) is the number of inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression ( df/dx_i )</td>
<td>Expression of the derivative of the function ( f ) versus the ( i )th input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The derivative \( df/dx_i \) can be set to zero.

The variables that are allowed in the expression are: \( T \) or \( t \) for time, and \( x_i \) \( (i \) from 1 to \( n) \) which represents the \( i \)th input. For example, for the 3-input math function block, the allowed variables are: \( T, t, x_1, x_2, \) and \( x_3 \). For the 1-input math function block, the variable \( x \), which refers to the only input, is also allowed.

6.4.4 Lookup Tables

There are four lookup table blocks: One-dimensional regular lookup table and lookup table with data from Simview graph, and 2-dimensional lookup tables with integer input and floating-point input.

All four lookup tables can be used in both power circuit and control circuit.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1-dimensional Simview graph</th>
<th>2-dimensional Integer Index ( i ) Floating point Index ( j )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attributes for one-dimensional lookup table (Simview graph):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Graph File</td>
<td>Name of the Simview file to be used as the lookup table data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Column</td>
<td>Input column of the lookup table, selected from a drop-down menu after a graph file is loaded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output Column</td>
<td>Output column of the lookup table, selected from a drop-down menu after a graph file is loaded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For 2-dimensional lookup tables, the node on the left is for the row index input, and the node on the top is for the column index input.

A one-dimensional lookup table has one input and one output. Two data arrays, corresponding to the input and output arrays, are stored in a lookup table.
A 2-dimensional lookup table with integer input has two inputs. The output data is stored in a 2-dimensional matrix. The two inputs correspond to the row and column indices of the matrix. For example, if the row index is 3 and the column index is 4, the output will be $A(3,4)$ where $A$ is the data matrix.

A 2-dimensional lookup table with floating-point input is similar to the lookup table with integer input. The difference is that inputs are floating-point values, and interpolation is used to calculate the output.

Except the one-dimensional lookup table (Simview graph) where data is defined in a Simview file, there are two ways to define lookup table data. One is to enter the data directly in the dialog window in the Lookup Table tab. Another is to prepare the lookup table externally using a text editor, and define the file in the dialog window.

To enter the data directly in the dialog window, define the number of rows (and columns for 2-dimensional lookup tables), and click on Set. Then enter the values in the data cells provided. For 2-dimensional lookup tables with floating-point input, also enter row input array in the left most column and column input array in the top most row.

To prepare the data externally in a text file, define the data in the format as described below. Then click on Open File... to load the file. Click on Reload Data if the text file is modified after it is loaded. Click on Save As... to save the data to an external file.

Note that the external text file is optional. When an external text file is not defined, the internal data is used. But if an external text file is defined, the text file takes the precedence and will overwrite the internal data. It is important to note that, if the dialog window is closed, the external file will be saved automatically when one closes the dialog window (by clicking on X at the upper right corner of the dialog window). Also, a copy of the external text file is saved into the schematic file. In the case where the schematic file is moved to a different computer and the external text file does not exist, PSIM will recreate the text file from the last time.

The data format for one-dimensional lookup tables is:

\[
\begin{align*}
V_{in}(1), & \quad V_{o}(1) \\
V_{in}(2), & \quad V_{o}(2) \\
\vdots \\
V_{in}(N), & \quad V_{o}(N)
\end{align*}
\]

Data points can be separated by either comma or space, such as:

\[
\begin{align*}
V_{in}(1) & \quad V_{o}(1) \\
V_{in}(2) & \quad V_{o}(2) \\
\vdots \\
V_{in}(N) & \quad V_{o}(N)
\end{align*}
\]

The input array $V_{in}$ must be monotonically increasing. Between two points, linear interpolation is used to obtain the output. When the value of the input is less than $V_{in}(1)$ or greater than $V_{in}(N)$, the output will be clamped to $V_{o}(1)$ or $V_{o}(N)$.

The data format for 2-dimensional lookup tables with integer input is:

\[
\begin{align*}
M, & \quad N \\
A_{11}, & \quad A_{12}, \ldots, A_{1N} \\
A_{21}, & \quad A_{22}, \ldots, A_{2N} \\
\vdots & \quad \vdots \\
A_{M1}, & \quad A_{M2}, \ldots, A_{MN}
\end{align*}
\]

where $M$ and $N$ are the number of rows and columns, respectively. Since the row or column index must be an integer, the input value is automatically converted to an integer. If either the row or column index is out of the range (for example, the row index is less than 1 or greater than m), the output will be zero.

The data format for 2-dimensional lookup tables with floating-point input is:

\[
\begin{align*}
M, & \quad N \\
V_{r1} & \quad V_{r2} \ldots V_{rM} \\
V_{c1} & \quad V_{c2} \ldots V_{cN} \\
A_{11}, & \quad A_{12}, \ldots, A_{1N}
\end{align*}
\]
where \( m \) is the number of rows and \( n \) is the number of columns; \( V_r \) is the row vector and \( V_c \) is the column vector; and \( A(i,j) \) is the output value at Row \( i \) and Column \( j \). Note that Vectors \( V_r \) and \( V_c \) must be monotonically increasing.

If an input falls between two points, interpolation is used to calculate the value. If an input is less than the minimum or greater than the maximum value, the input will be limited to the minimum or maximum value.

**Examples:**

The following shows a one-dimensional lookup table:

\[
egin{align*}
1., & 10. \\
2., & 30. \\
3., & 20. \\
4., & 60. \\
5., & 50. \\
\end{align*}
\]

If the input is 0.99, the output will be 10. If the input is 1.5, the output will be \( 10 + \frac{(1.5 - 1) \cdot (30 - 10)}{2 - 1} = 20 \).

The following shows a 2-dimensional lookup table with integer inputs:

\[
egin{align*}
3, & 4 \\
1., & -2., 4., 1. \\
2., & 3., 5., 8. \\
3., & 8., -2., 9. \\
\end{align*}
\]

If the row index is 2 and the column index is 4, the output will be 8. If the row index is 5, regardless of the column index, the output will be 0.

The following shows a 2-dimensional lookup table with floating-point inputs:

\[
egin{align*}
3, & 4 \\
1.1 & 2.2 3.3 \\
1.2 & 2.3 3.4 4.5 \\
1., & -2., 4., 1. \\
2., & 3., 5., 8. \\
3., & 8., -2., 9. \\
\end{align*}
\]

If the row input is 2 and the column input is 3, the following table shows the four points that enclose the input point, and the output value of 3.826 through interpolation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Row</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.4.5 C Block

A C block allows users to enter C code directly without compiling the code, unlike in external DLL blocks where the code needs to be compiled into a DLL using an external compiler. The code of the C block will be interpreted and executed at runtime by a built-in C interpreter in PSIM.

The interface of the C block dialog window is shown below.

The number of input and output ports of the C block is defined in the *Number of Input/Output Ports* section. If the number of ports is changed, the image of the block in the schematic will change accordingly.

The function **Insert GetPsimValue** allows the C block to access element parameters and parameters defined in a parameter file. Assuming that the circuit has a resistor called R1, to access the resistance value of R1, click on **Insert GetPsimValue**. The following dialog window will appear.
Click on OK, and the following code will be inserted to the code:

```c
int nStatus = -1; // If the function succeeds, the value of nStatus will be 0.
double nValue = GetPsimValue(reserved_ThreadIndex, reserved_AppPtr, "R1", "Resistance", &nStatus);
```

The resistance of the resistor R1 will be obtained and placed in the variable `nValue`.

To access a variable, for example "alpha", defined in a parameter file, use the following code:

```c
int nStatus = -1;
double nValue = GetPsimValue(reserved_ThreadIndex, reserved_AppPtr, "", "alpha", &nStatus);
if(nStatus != 0)
{
    //optional error handling code
    printf("Error: alpha = %f, nStatus = %i \n", value, nStatus);
}
```

The value of the variable alpha will be obtained and placed in the variable `nValue`.

For faster simulation, the function `GetPsimValue` should be used in `SimulationBegin`, and the variable `nValue` should be defined as a global variable so that it can be accessed in the `SimulationStep` function.

The code area includes four main sections:

- **Variable/Function Definitions:** This section includes statements and global variable definition.
- **Simulation Step Function:** This function is called at each simulation step.
- **SimulationBegin Function:** This function is called only once at the beginning of simulation for initialization.
- **SimulationEnd Function:** This function is called only once at the end of simulation for termination.

Click on the **Check Code** button to check if the code has any compiling errors. Click on the **Edit Image** button to customize the image of the C block.

For example, assume that a C block has 2 inputs and 3 outputs. After numbers of input/output ports are defined, the C block will have an image in PSIM as follows:

```
2-input / 3-output
```

```
input

in[0] → in[1] →

```

The node sequence is from the top to the bottom.

In C code, the `in` array is used to pass the values from PSIM into the C block, and the `out` array is used to pass the values from the C block back to PSIM. In this example, the first input, which corresponds to `in[0]` in the code, is the node at the top left, and the first output, which corresponds to `out[0]` in the code, is at the top right.

The difference between the C block and the external DLL block is that, even though the C block is easier to use, it does have the disadvantage that the custom code in the C block can not be debugged, while in the external DLL block it is possible to set break points and trace/step through the code for debugging.

**C Block in a z-Domain Circuit:**

When a C block is used in a z-domain circuit, PSIM will check if there are any ZOH blocks connected immediately at the inputs of the C block. If there are, it will take the sampling rate of the first ZOH block that it encounters starting from the 1st input, and use this sampling rate for the whole block. For example, if there are 2 inputs, and Input 1 is connected to a 10-kHz ZOH, and Input 2 is connected to a 20-kHz ZOH, it will take 10kHz and ignore 20kHz.

At the moment, the C block does not support inputs of multiple sampling rates. That is, code in the C block will run at one rate only.

If no ZOH is connected immediately at the inputs of the C block, the C block is called at every small time step. The same behavior also applied to Simplified C blocks and external DLL blocks.
6.4.6 Simplified C Block

A simplified C block is a special case of the C block. Unlike the C block that contains a variable/function definition section and three functions, the simplified C block contains only the C code that is called and ran at every time step, corresponding to the code for the `SimulationStep` function.

The interface of the simplified C block dialog window is shown below.

![Simplified C Block Interface](image)

The number of input and output ports of the ports is defined in the *Number of Input/Output Ports* section. After the number of ports is changed, the image of the block in the schematic will change accordingly.

Variables that can be used in the code include:
- `t`: Time passed from PSIM
- `delt`: Time step passed from PSIM
- `x1`, `x2`, ... : Inputs 1, 2, etc.
- `y1`, `y2`, ... : Outputs 1, 2, etc.

When the checkbox "Enable Fixed Point Header Files" is checked, by clicking on **Fixed Point Settings**, one can define the fixed point data types of the C block inputs and outputs.

By clicking on the **Variables** button, one can define variables that can be passed from the main circuit into the C block. The variable can be a numerical value or a formula, for example:

- `k1 = 15.2`
- `k1 = Freq/sqrt(2)`

where `Freq` is a variable defined in a parameter file.

By clicking on the **Insert GetPsimValue** button, one can get the variables defined elsewhere and use them in the C code. The usage of this function is the same as in the C block.

Unlike the C block, the simplified C block can be used for automatic code generation.
6.4.7 External DLL Blocks

An external DLL (dynamic link library) block allows users to write code in C/C++, compile it into DLL using Microsoft Visual C/C++, and link it with PSIM. These blocks can be used in either the power circuit or the control circuit.

A DLL block receives values from PSIM as inputs, performs the calculation, and sends the results back to PSIM. PSIM calls the DLL routine at each simulation time step. However, when the inputs of the DLL block are connected to one of these discrete elements (zero-order hold, unit delay, discrete integrators and differentiators, z-domain transfer function blocks, and digital filters), the DLL block is called only at the discrete sampling times.

Two types of DLL blocks are provided: Simple DLL Block and General DLL Block. The simple DLL block has a fixed number of inputs and outputs, and the DLL file name is the only parameter that needs to be defined. On the other hand, the general DLL block allows users to define arbitrary number of inputs/outputs and additional parameters. Users can also customize the DLL block image.

The simple DLL block is easier to program and use.

Simple DLL blocks with 1 input/output up to 25 inputs/outputs are provided. The images and parameters of DLL blocks with 1, 3, and 6 inputs/outputs are shown below.

Images:

| Attribute: |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Parameter | Description |
| File Name | Name of the DLL file |

The node with a dot is for the first input (in[0]). The input/output node sequence is from the top to the bottom.

The images and parameters of a general DLL block are shown below.

Image (for a block with 2 inputs and 3 outputs):

| Attribute: |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Parameter | Description |
| DLL File | Name of the DLL file |
| Input Data File | Name of the input data file that DLL reads (optional) |
| Number of Input Nodes | Number of input nodes (optional) |
| Number of Output Nodes | Number of output nodes (optional) |
| IN Nodes | List of input nodes (optional) |
Chapter 6: Other Components

The node with a dot is the first input (in[0]). The input/output node sequence is from the top to the bottom.

By default, users define the number of inputs and outputs. But the number of inputs and outputs, the node names, as well as the number of parameters and the parameter names can all be defined inside the DLL routine. For more details on defining and programming for the general DLL block, please refer to the help file "Help General DLL Block.pdf" and related examples.

The name of the DLL file can be arbitrary. The DLL file can be placed in one of the two places, in the order of precedence: in the PSIM directory, and in the same directory as the schematic file that uses the DLL file.

**Note:** When a DLL file is used in multiple DLL blocks in a schematic, if global or static variables are declared and used in the DLL code, these global/static variables will be the same and be shared among all the DLL blocks. If this is not what users intended, the DLL calculation can be incorrect, and users should avoid using global/static variables in the code in this case.

Several examples using the simple DLL blocks and the general DLL blocks are provided in the "examples/custom DLL" sub-folder in the PSIM directory.

### 6.4.8 Embedded Software Block

An Embedded Software Block is a special type of the external DLL blocks. It is intended for modeling embedded software devices such as microcontrollers and DSP.

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLL File</td>
<td>Name of the DLL file that defines the functionality and the interface of the block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Nodes</td>
<td>Total number of input and output nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An Embedded Software Block has similar functionality as a general external DLL block. However, unlike the general DLL block whose connection nodes are predefined as either inputs or outputs, the Embedded Software Block allows the node types to be programmed as needed. Also, additional information, such as the exact instant at which the state of a variable changes, can be calculated and passed to and from PSIM.

The Embedded Software Block is a control circuit element, and can be used in the control circuit only.

For more information on how to use the Embedded Software Block, please refer to the document "Help Embedded Software Block.pdf".
6.5 **IC Models**

Several PWM IC and driver IC models are provided.

### 6.5.1 PWM IC

The following PWM IC models are provided:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IC Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UC3823A</td>
<td>High speed PWM controller for high frequency switch-mode power supplies. The UC3823A and UC3823B and the UC3825A and UC3825B family of PWM controllers are improved versions of the standard UC3823 and UC3825 family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3823B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3825A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3825B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3842</td>
<td>Current mode fixed frequency PWM controller for off-line or dc-dc converters. The UC3842/3/4/5 family of control devices provides the necessary functions to implement off-line or dc-to-dc fixed frequency current mode control schemes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3843</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3844</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3845</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3846</td>
<td>Current mode fixed frequency PWM controller for off-line or dc-dc converters. The UC3846 family of control ICs provides the necessary functions to implement fixed frequency, current mode control schemes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3854</td>
<td>High power factor preregulator providing active power factor correction. UC3854A/B products are pin compatible enhanced versions of the UC3854. It provides all the functions necessary for active power factor corrected preregulators.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3854A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3854B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC3872</td>
<td>Resonant lamp ballast controller. UC3872 is a resonant lamp ballast controller optimized for driving cold cathode fluorescent, neon, and other gas discharge lamps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC3806</td>
<td>Low power, dual output, current mode PWM controller. With the same block diagram and pinout of the popular UC3846 series, the UCC3806 line features increased switching frequency capability while reducing the bias current used within the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC3817</td>
<td>BiCMOS power factor preregulator with average current mode control. The UCC3817/18 family provides all the functions necessary for active power factor corrected preregulators. The controller achieves near unity power factor by shaping the ac input line current waveform to correspond to that of the ac input line voltage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC3818</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC3895</td>
<td>BiCMOS advanced phase-shift PWM controller for full bridge power stage. UCC3895 is a phase-shift PWM controller that implements control of a full-bridge power stage by phase shifting the switching of one half-bridge with respect to the other. It allows constant frequency pulse-width modulation in conjunction with resonant zero-voltage switching to provide high efficiency at high frequencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C40</td>
<td>BiCMOS low-power current-mode PWM controllers. They provide necessary functions to control fixed-frequency peak current-mode controlled power supplies. They differ in the start threshold voltage and the minimum operating voltage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UCC38C45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The UC3901 model is a Level-2 model only.

### 6.5.2 Driver IC

The following driver IC models are provided:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Model Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UC3901</td>
<td>Isolated feedback generator. UC3901 is an alternative to an optical coupler. It is designed to solve many of the problems associated with closing a feedback control loop across a voltage isolation boundary. It features an amplitude modulation system which allows a loop error signal to be coupled with a small high-frequency transformer or capacitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR21834</td>
<td>Half-bridge driver for high voltage, high speed power MOSFET and IGBT with dependent high and low side referenced output channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS21867</td>
<td>High and low side driver for voltage, high speed power MOSFET and IGBT driver with independent high and low side referenced output channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC4423A</td>
<td>3A dual output high-speed power MOSFET drivers. TC4423A: dual inverting. TC4424A: dual non-inverting. TC4425A: one inverting and one non-inverting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC4424A</td>
<td>1.5A dual output high-speed power MOSFET drivers. TC4426A: dual inverting. TC4427A: dual non-inverting. TC4428A: one inverting and one non-inverting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.5.3 555 Timer

The 555 Timer is a highly stable device for generating accurate time delays or oscillation. Additional terminals are provided for triggering or resetting if desired. In the time delay mode of operation, the time is precisely controlled by external resistor and capacitor.

In PSIM model, the OUT signal of the 555 Timer is a control signal node.
6.6  **Initial Values**

The initial node voltages of the power circuit and control circuit can be defined using this block. This value will not be kept as soon as the simulation started.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initial Value</td>
<td>Initial value of the node voltage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.7  **Parameter File**

A parameter file defines the variables used in a circuit. For example, the resistance of a resistor can be specified as R1, and R1 is defined in a parameter file. Also, a parameter file can be used by itself as a computational tool.

A parameter file is a text file created by a text editor. It supports the following format:

- Text from the character // to the end of the line is treated as comment
- \( k1 = 12.3 \) // Define the value of the variable \( k1 \)
- \( k1 = a + b \times c \) // Define \( k1 \) in a math expression
- (global) \( k1 = 12.3 \) // Define \( k1 \) as a global variable (for use in SimCoder)
- \( L1 = 3m \) // power-of-ten suffix is supported. \( L1 = 3e-3 \)
- \( C1 = 100uF \) // The unit "F" is ignored.

Note that, as compared to Version 9.1, the following format is no longer supported:

- LIMIT var1 Vlow Vupper // This should be replaced by the "if...else if..." statement
- % as comment. Now comments must start with double slash //. % is now used as modulo operation.
- var1 value     (for example "R1 2.5"). Now an equal sign must be used to define a variable.

The definition "(global)" is used in SimCoder only for automatic code generation. Please refer to the SimCoder User Manual on how it is used. For PSIM simulation, this definition is ignored. That is, a parameter definition "(global) K1 = 1.2" is treated the same as "K1 = 1.2".

Conditional statements and error/warning message functions are supported, as shown below:

```plaintext
if (k1 > 10)
{
    a = 10
    b = 1
}
else if (k1 <= 20)
{
    a = 20
    b = 2
}
else
{
    Error {"Error: The value of k1 is out of the range. k1 = %f", k1}
}
```
if (k1 == 20)
{
    Warning {"Warning: The value of k1 is equal to %.0f", k1}
}

When writing the conditional statements "if...else if...else...", the standard C syntax applies (without the semicolon ; at the end of each statement though).

In addition, the while loop is supported. For example,

```c
iflag = 1
a = 0
b = 0.1
while (iflag == 1)
{
    a = a + b
    if (a > 10)
        iflag = 0
}
```

Supported operators and mathematical functions in a parameter file are:

```
+      // addition
-      // subtraction
*      // multiplication
/      // division
%      // modulo operator that returns the remainder after division (e.g. 5 % 2 = 1)
^      // to the power of
==     // conditional equal
!=     // not equal
>      // greater than
>=     // equal or greater than
<      // less than
<=     // equal or less than
!      // not
&&     // and
||     // or
sin(x) // sine
cos(x) // cosine
tan(x) // tangent
asin(x) // arcsine
acos(x) // arccosine
atan(x) // arctangent
atan2(y,x) // arctangent with x and y defined
sinh(x) // hyperbolic sine
cosh(x) // hyperbolic cosine	anh(x) // hyperbolic tangent
pow(x,y) // x to the power of y
sqrt(x) // square root
exp(x) // base-e exponential of x, i.e. e^x
ln(x) (or log(x)) // natural logarithm of x (base e)
log10(x) // common logarithm of x (base 10)
abs(x) // absolute
sign(x) // sign function that returns 1 if x > 0, -1 if x < 0, and 0 if x = 0
ceil(x) // function that returns the integer larger than x
floor(x) // function that returns the integer smaller than x
if (...){...} else if (...){...} else {...}       // conditional if statement
```
### Chapter 6: Other Components

The following code snippets illustrate the use of various control structures and error/warning reporting functions in the simulation environment:

```plaintext
iif (condition, value1, value2) // inline if statement (note it is "iif" not "if")
while (...) {...} // while loop
Error {"Error text %f, %f", var1, var2} // Error statement. Up to 5 variables are supported.
Warning {"Warning text %f, %f", var1, var2} // Warning statement. Up to 5 variables are supported
```

Note that the input or output of all trigonometric functions is in rad. Also, the Error or Warning reporting functions can control the variable number format, as shown below.

```plaintext
Error {"Error message"}
Error {"Error message %.nf", k1} // Print the value of k1, where n is the number of digits after the
// decimal point. For example, if k1 = 12.34, %.1f will give 12.3
Warning {"Warning message"}
Warning {"Warning message %.nf", k1} // Print the value of k1, where n is the number of digits after
// the decimal point. For example, if k1 = 12.34, %.1f will give 12.3
```

An Error function will stop the simulation, while a Warning function will allow the simulation to proceed.

To display the variable values of a parameter file, go to **Edit >> Show Values**. For example, the figure below shows a parameter file on the left, and the values on the right.

![Parameter File](image)

The function **Show Values** provides a very convenient way of checking the calculation.

### Parameter File in Circuit Schematic:

When a parameter file element is used in a circuit schematic, it has the same hierarchy as the circuit in which it resides. A variable defined in a parameter file in a higher-level circuit can be used in all lower circuits, but not the other way around. Also, a variable defined in a parameter file in a circuit cannot be used in another circuit of the same level.

For example, assume that a main circuit contains a parameter file "main_param.txt", and the main circuit contains two subcircuits S1 and S2, with a parameter file "sub1_param.txt" in S1 and another parameter file "sub2_param.txt" in S2. A variable defined in "main_param.txt" can be used in both S1 and S2 circuits as well as in parameter files "sub1_param.txt" and "sub2_param.txt". However, a variable defined in "sub1_param.txt" or "sub2_param.txt" cannot be used in the higher level main circuit and in "main_param.txt".

Similarly, since Subcircuits S1 and S2 are parallel, a variable defined in "sub1_param.txt" cannot be used in Subcircuit S2 and "sub2_param.txt", and vice versa.

In addition, when PSIM saves a parameter file, it will save the information of both the relative path and absolute path of the parameter file, as well as a copy of the content of the parameter file.

When PSIM loads a schematic with a parameter file element, it will search and load the parameter file in the following order: relative path (relative to the schematic file), absolute path, and the local path (the local folder where the schematic file is). If PSIM still cannot find the parameter file, it will create the parameter file in the local schematic folder from the copy that it saved in the schematic file.

### Parameter Tool:

With the capability to show variable values and handle conditional statements, the parameter file element becomes a very useful computational tool in its own right. To facilitate its usage, a function is provided to open...
a parameter file without the need of a schematic. To access this function, go to Utilities >> Parameter Tool.

6.8 AC Analysis

6.8.1 AC Sweep

The frequency response of a circuit or a control loop can be obtained with the ac analysis. A key feature of the ac analysis in PSIM is that, a circuit can be in its original switchmode form, and no average model is required. Nevertheless, with the average model, it takes much shorter time to perform the ac analysis.

The following are the steps to set up the ac analysis:
- Identify a sinusoidal voltage source as the excitation source for the ac sweep.
- Place ac sweep probes at the desired output location. To measure the loop response of a closed control loop, use the node-to-node probe.
- Place the AC Sweep block on the schematic, and define the parameters of the ac sweep.
- Run the simulation.

Below are the images of the ac sweep probes and the AC Sweep block.

Images:

![AC Sweep Probe](image1)
![AC Sweep Probe (loop)](image2)
![AC Sweep](image3)

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start Frequency</td>
<td>Start frequency of the ac sweep, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Frequency</td>
<td>End frequency of the ac sweep, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points</td>
<td>Number of data points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag for Points</td>
<td>Flag to define how the data points is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flag = 0: Points are distributed linearly in LOG10 scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flag = 1: Points are distributed linearly in linear scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Name</td>
<td>Name of the excitation source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start Amplitude</td>
<td>Excitation source amplitude at the start frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Amplitude</td>
<td>Excitation source amplitude at the end frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freq. for extra Points</td>
<td>Frequencies of additional data points. If the frequency-domain characteristics change rapidly at a certain frequency range, one can add extra points in this region to obtain better data resolution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The principle of the ac analysis is that a small ac excitation signal is injected into the system as the perturbation, and the signal at the same frequency is extracted at the output. To obtain accurate ac analysis results, the excitation source amplitude must be set properly. The amplitude must be small enough so that the perturbation stays in the linear region. On the other hand, the excitation source amplitude must be large enough so that the output signal is not affected by numerical errors.

In general, a physical system has low attenuation in the low frequency range and high attenuation in the high frequency range. A good selection of the excitation source amplitude would be to have a relatively small amplitude at the low frequency, and a relatively large amplitude at the high frequency.

Sometimes, after ac analysis is complete, a warning message is displayed as follows:
**Warning:** The program did not reach the steady state after 60 cycles. See File “message.txt” for more details.

This message occurs when the software fails to detect the steady state at the ac sweep output after 60 cycles. To address this problem, one may increase damping in the circuit (by including parasitic resistances, for example), or adjust the excitation source amplitude, or reduce simulation time step. The file “message.txt” gives the information on the frequency at which this occurs and the relative error. The relative error will indicate how far the data point is from reaching the steady state.

**Example: Open-Loop Response of a Buck Converter**

The circuit on the left is an one-quadrant buck converter. An excitation source is injected to the modulation signal, and the output voltage is measured. The result of the ac analysis, on the right, shows the open-loop response of the output voltage versus the modulation signal.

---

**Example: Loop Transfer Function of a Closed-Loop Circuit**

The ac analysis can be used to find out the loop response of a closed-loop system. The circuit below shows a buck converter with average current mode control. By injecting the excitation signal into the current feedback path, and using the node-to-node ac sweep probe, we can obtain the loop transfer function directly. With the loop transfer function, one can determine the bandwidth of the control loop and the phase margin.

Please note that the ac sweep probe should be connected such that the dotted side is connected to the node after the excitation source injection.

---

**Example: Loop Transfer Function of a Switchmode Power Supply**

The loop transfer function of a switchmode power supply controlled by a PWM IC can also be determined in a similar way. The figure below shows a buck converter controlled by TI UC3842. The excitation source can be inserted in the feedback path, before the op. amp. output.
6.8.2 AC Sweep Multisine

The AC Sweep (multisine) block has the same functionality as the AC sweep. Its advantage is to simulate multiple frequency of sine-wave in only one cycle of the lowest frequency wave, resulting faster simulation.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start Frequency</td>
<td>Start frequency of the ac sweep, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End Frequency</td>
<td>End frequency of the ac sweep, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points</td>
<td>Number of data points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flag for Points</td>
<td>Flag to define how the data points is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flag = 0: Points are distributed linearly in LOG10 scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flag = 1: Points are distributed uniformly in LOG10 scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Name</td>
<td>Name of the excitation source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Amplitude</td>
<td>Excitation source peak amplitude at the start frequency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Cycles</td>
<td>The number of cycles of the excitation source amplitude to be simulated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steady State Time</td>
<td>The time predicted when the circuit has completed transient and reached steady state, in second. User may make approximated estimation of this value or run a single time simulation to determine it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.9 Parameter Sweep

Parameter sweep can be performed on any parameters:

The image and parameters of the parameter sweep block are shown below.

Image:

![Parameter Sweep Block]

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Name of the parameter to be swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Starting value of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td>End value of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment</td>
<td>Increment step value of the parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>When checked, the parameter line will be enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, let the resistance of a resistor be “Ro”. To sweep the resistance from 2 Ohm to 10 Ohm, with an increment step value of 2 Ohm, check the Enabled checkbox, and define the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Ro</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increment</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parameter sweep will produce two plots: One is the outputs versus time, and the other is the outputs at the last simulation point versus the swept parameter.

For example, a circuit has two outputs V1 and V2, and the resistance Ro is swept. The total simulation time is 0.1 sec. After the simulation, there will be two plots in Simview. One is V1 and V2 versus time. The other is V1 and V2 versus Ro. The V1 and V2 values used in the second plot are the values at the last simulation point at 0.1 sec.
Several types of independent voltage/current sources are available in PSIM. The notation of a current source direction is: the current flows out of the higher-potential node, through the external circuit, and back into the lower-potential node of the source.

Note that current sources can be used in the power circuit only.

### 7.1 Constant

The constant element allows users to define a constant. It behaviors as a grounded voltage source.

**Image:**

![Constant Element](image1.png)

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Value of the constant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.2 Time

The Time element is a special case of the piecewise linear voltage source. It is treated as a grounded voltage source, and the value is equal to the simulation time, in sec.

**Image:**

![Time Element](image2.png)

### 7.3 Ground

There are three different ground elements in PSIM library. Although they are in different shape, they are electrically connected together. The different shape of these grounds provide the convenience for user to separate the grounding in different functional sections of the circuits.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground</th>
<th>Ground (1)</th>
<th>Ground (2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Ground" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Ground (1)" /></td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Ground (2)" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4 Voltage and Current Sources

7.4.1 DC Source

A dc source has a constant amplitude. The reference of the grounded dc voltage sources is the ground.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC</th>
<th>DC (battery)</th>
<th>Grounded DC (circle)</th>
<th>Grounded DC (T)</th>
<th>Current</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Attribute:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amplitude</td>
<td>Amplitude of the source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Resistance</td>
<td>Source series resistance, in Ohm (for DC and DC (battery) voltage sources only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Inductance</td>
<td>Source series Inductance, in H (for DC and DC (battery) voltage sources only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The series resistance and inductance represent the source impedance.

7.4.2 Sinusoidal Source

A sinusoidal source is defined as:

\[
V_o = V_m \sin(2\pi f t + \theta) + V_{offset}
\]

The specifications can be illustrated as follows.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peak Amplitude</td>
<td>Peak amplitude $V_m$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency $f$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase Angle</td>
<td>Initial phase angle $\theta$, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Offset</td>
<td>DC offset $V_{offset}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To facilitate the setup of three-phase circuits, a symmetrical three-phase Y-connected sinusoidal voltage source is provided. The dotted phase of the source refers to Phase A.

### Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>V (line-line rms)</td>
<td>Line-to-line rms voltage amplitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency $f$, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Angle (phase A)</td>
<td>Initial angle for Phase A, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Resistance</td>
<td>Source series resistance, in Ohm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Series Inductance</td>
<td>Source series inductance, in H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 7.4.3 Square-Wave Source

A square-wave voltage source or current source is defined by peak-to-peak amplitude, frequency, duty-cycle, and DC offset. The duty cycle is defined as the ratio between the high-potential interval versus the period.

### Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vpeak-peak</td>
<td>Peak-to-peak amplitude $V_{pp}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty Cycle</td>
<td>Duty cycle $D$ of the high-potential interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Offset</td>
<td>DC offset $V_{offset}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase Delay</td>
<td>Phase delay $\theta$ of the waveform, in deg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rise Time</td>
<td>Rise time from low to high, in sec. (for SPICE only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall Time</td>
<td>Fall time from high to low, in sec. (for SPICE only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The specifications of a square wave source are illustrated as follows.
When the phase delay θ is positive, the waveform is shifted to the right along the time axis.

### 7.4.4 Triangular/Sawtooth Sources

A triangular-wave voltage source or current source is defined by peak-to-peak amplitude, frequency, duty-cycle, and DC offset. The duty cycle is defined as the ratio between the rising-slope interval versus the period.

#### Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage</th>
<th>Current</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Voltage Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Current Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vpeak-peak</td>
<td>Peak-to-peak amplitude $V_{pp}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty Cycle</td>
<td>Duty cycle $D$ of the rising slope interval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Offset</td>
<td>DC offset $V_{offset}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase Delay</td>
<td>Phase delay $\theta$ of the waveform, in deg.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The specifications of a triangular wave source are illustrated as:

When the phase delay $\theta$ is positive, the waveform is shifted to the right along the time axis.

A sawtooth-wave voltage source is a special case of the triangular source with the duty cycle of 1 and dc offset and phase delay of 0, and with one node grounded. It is defined as below:

#### Image:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sawtooth-wave</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Sawtooth-wave Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vpeak</td>
<td>Peak amplitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall Time (SPICE)</td>
<td>Fall time, in sec. (for SPICE only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.4.5 Step Sources

A step voltage/current source changes from one level to another at a given time. Two types of step sources are provided: one that changes from 0 to a certain level (refer to as Step in the library), and the other that changes from one level to another level (referred to as Step (2-level) in the library).

#### Images:

For the Step type source:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vstep</td>
<td>Value $V_{step}$ after the step change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tstep</td>
<td>Time $T_{step}$ at which the step change occurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transition Time (SPICE)</td>
<td>Transition time from low to high, in sec. (for SPICE only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the Step (2-level) type source:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vstep1</td>
<td>Value $V_{step1}$ before the step change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vstep2</td>
<td>Value $V_{step2}$ after the step change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tstep</td>
<td>Time $T_{step}$ at which the step change occurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transition Time</td>
<td>Transition time $T_{transition}$ from $V_{step1}$ to $V_{step2}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The specifications of the voltage step sources are illustrated as follows:

For SPICE, the transition time cannot be 0, and must be a non-zero value.
7.4.6 Piecewise Linear Source

The waveform of a piecewise linear source consists of piecewise linear segments. It is defined by the number of points, the values and the corresponding time (in sec.). The values and times can be entered either separately, or in pair.

**Images:**

```
Voltage

Current
```

**Attributes:**

For the sources that define the values and times separately:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency of the waveform, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points n</td>
<td>No. of points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Values V1...Vn</td>
<td>Values at each point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time T1...Tn</td>
<td>Time at each point, in sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the sources that define the values and times in pair:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>Frequency of the waveform, in Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Times, Values (t1,v1) ...</td>
<td>Time and value at each point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The time and value pair must be enclosed by left and right brackets. The time and value can be separated by either a comma, such as (1.2m,5.5), or a space, such as (1.2m 5.5), or both, such as (1.2m, 5.5).

**Example:**

The following is a non-periodic piecewise linear source. It has 3 segments which can be defined by four points (marked in the figure).

![Graph of a non-periodic piecewise linear source with 3 segments](image)

The specification for the *piecewise linear* voltage source will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>0.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of Points n</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Values V1...Vn</td>
<td>1. 1. 3. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Times T1...Tn</td>
<td>0. 0.1 0.2 0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The specification for the *piecewise linear (in pair)* voltage source will be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>0.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Times, Values (t1,v1)...</td>
<td>(0., 1) (0.1, 1) (0.2, 3) (0.3, 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.4.7 Random Source

The amplitude of a random voltage source (VRAND) or current source (IRAND) is determined randomly at each simulation time step. A random source is defined as:

\[ v_o = V_m \cdot n + V_{offset} \]

where \( V_m \) is the peak-to-peak amplitude of the source, \( n \) is a random number in the range of 0 to 1, and \( V_{offset} \) is the dc offset.

Images:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peak-Peak Amplitude</td>
<td>Peak-to-peak amplitude of the source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC Offset</td>
<td>DC offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration (SPICE)</td>
<td>Duration of an individual voltage value, in sec. (for SPICE only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4.8 Math Function Source

A math function source allows one to define the source in a mathematical expression.

Image:

Attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>The mathematical expression of the source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tstart</td>
<td>Start time of the source</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the expression, “T” or “t” represents time. For example, to implement a sinusoidal source, the expression will be: \( \sin(2 \times 3.14159 \times 60 \times t + 2.09) \).

7.4.9 Voltage/Current-Controlled Sources

The following types of controlled sources are available:

- Voltage controlled voltage source
- Current controlled voltage source
- Voltage controlled current source
- Current controlled current source
- Variable-gain voltage controlled voltage source
- Variable-gain voltage controlled current source

The controlling current of a current controlled source must come from a RLC branch. Also, for a controlled current source, the controlling voltage or current can not be an independent source.
Note that controlled sources can be used in the power circuit only.

**Images:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voltage-controlled</th>
<th>Current-controlled</th>
<th>Current-controlled (flowing through)</th>
<th>Variable-gain voltage-controlled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage-controlled</td>
<td>Current-controlled</td>
<td>Current-controlled (flowing through)</td>
<td>Variable-gain voltage-controlled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attribute:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain of the source</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For voltage-controlled sources, the controlling voltage is from the positive node (+) to the negative node (-).

For current-controlled sources (with an arrow pointing from one node to another), the control nodes are connected across a RLC branch, and the direction of the controlling current is indicated by the arrow.

For current-controlled sources (with a wire connecting the two nodes), the controlling current flows from one control node to another, as indicated by the arrow. A 10-uOhm resistor is used to sense the controlling current.

The output of a controlled source, except variable-gain controlled sources, is equal to the gain multiplied by the controlling voltage or current. For the variable-gain controlled sources, the output is equal to the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
    v_o &= (k \cdot v_{in2}) \cdot v_{in1} \\
    i_o &= (k \cdot v_{in2}) \cdot v_{in1}
\end{align*}
\]

Input 1 is on the side with the multiplication sign, and Input 2 is on the side with the letter k.

The difference between a variable-gain controlled source and a nonlinear source with multiplication is that, for the nonlinear source with multiplication, values of both \(v_{in1}\) and \(v_{in2}\) at the current time step are used to calculate the output and are updated in each iteration. But for the variable-gain controlled source, it is assumed that the change of \(v_{in2}\) is small from one time step to the next, and the value of \(v_{in2}\) at the previous time step is used at the current time step. This assumption is valid as long as \(v_{in2}\) changes at a much slower rate as compared to \(v_{in1}\) and the time step is small as compared to the change of \(v_{in2}\). Variable-gain controlled sources can be used in circuits which may otherwise have convergence problem with nonlinear sources with multiplication.

**Example:**

The circuits below illustrates the use of current controlled voltage sources. In the circuit on the left, the voltage source is controlled by the inductor current \(i_s\). With a gain of 1, the waveform of the voltage \(v_s\) is equal to that of \(i_s\). In this way, a current quantity can be converted to a voltage quantity. These two circuits are equivalent.
7.4.10 Nonlinear Voltage-Controlled Sources

The output of a nonlinear voltage-controlled source is either the multiplication, division, or square-root of the inputs. They are defined as:

Nonlinear (multiplication): Output \( v_o = k \cdot v_{in1} \cdot v_{in2} \) or \( i_o = k \cdot v_{in1} \cdot v_{in2} \)

Nonlinear (division): Output \( v_o = k \cdot \frac{v_{in1}}{v_{in2}} \) or \( i_o = k \cdot \frac{v_{in1}}{v_{in2}} \)

Nonlinear (square-root): Output \( v_o = k \cdot \sqrt{v_{in1}} \) or \( i_o = k \cdot \sqrt{v_{in1}} \)

Nonlinear (power): Output \( v_o = \text{sign}(v_{in}) \cdot k \cdot (k_1 \cdot v_{in})^{k_2} \)

In the nonlinear power source, the term \( \text{sign}(v_{in}) \) is 1 if \( v_{in} \) is positive, and it is -1 if \( v_{in} \) is negative.

Note that these nonlinear sources can be used in the power circuit only.

Images:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multiplication</th>
<th>Division</th>
<th>Square-root</th>
<th>Power</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Multiplication" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Division" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Square-root" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Power" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attributes:

For all the sources except the nonlinear power source:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain ( k ) of the source</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the nonlinear power source:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Gain ( k ) of the source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient ( k_1 )</td>
<td>Coefficient ( k_1 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coefficient ( k_2 )</td>
<td>Coefficient ( k_2 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the nonlinear (division) source, Input 1 is on the side of the division sign.
8.1 Simulation Issues

8.1.1 Time Step Selection

PSIM uses the fixed time step in the simulation. In order to assure accurate results, the simulation time step should be properly chosen. The factors that limit the time step in a circuit include the switching period, widths of pulses or square waveforms, and intervals of fast transients. It is recommended that the time step should be at least one magnitude smaller than the smallest of the above.

8.1.2 Propagation Delays in Logic Circuits

The logic elements in PSIM are ideal, i.e. there is no propagation delay. If a logic circuit uses the propagation delays for its operation, a function block in PSIM, called the Time Delay block, needs to be added to represent the effect of the propagation delay.

To illustrate this, take a two-bit counter circuit as an example.

In the circuit on the left, the initial values of both \( Q_0 \) and \( Q_1 \) are assumed to be zero. At the clock rising edge, \( Q_0 \) will change to 1. Without delay, the position of \( Q_1 \), which should remain at 0, will toggle to 1 at the same time.

To prevent this, a time delay element with the delay period of one time step needs to be inserted between \( Q_0 \) and the input (J) of the second flip-flop.

8.1.3 Interface Between Power and Control Circuits

In PSIM, power circuits are represented in the discrete circuit form, and control circuits are represented in function block diagram. Power circuit components, such as RLC branches, switches, transformers, mutual inductors, current sources, floating voltage sources, and all types of controlled sources are not allowed in the control circuit. Similarly, control circuit components, such as logic gates, PI controllers, lookup tables, and other function blocks, are not allowed in the power circuit.

If there is a direct connection between the power circuit and the input of a control circuit element, a voltage sensor will be automatically inserted by the program. Similarly, if there is a direct connection between the output of a control circuit element and the power circuit, a control-power interface block will be automatically inserted. This is illustrated in the examples below.
It should be noted that, in PSIM, the power circuit and the control circuit are solved separately. There is one time step delay between the power and the control circuit solutions.

### 8.1.4 FFT Analysis

When using FFT for the harmonic analysis, one should make sure that the following requirements are satisfied:
- The waveforms have reached the steady state;
- The length of the data selected for FFT should be the multiple integer of the fundamental period.

For a 60-Hz waveform, for example, the data length should be restricted to 16.67 msec. (or multiples of 16.67 msec.). Otherwise, the FFT results will be incorrect. The data is selected by clicking on **X Axis** in SIMVIEW, de-selecting **Auto-scale** in **Range**, and specifying the starting time and the final time. The FFT analysis is only performed on the data that are displayed on the screen.

Note that the FFT results are discrete. The FFT results are determined by the time interval between two consecutive data points, Δt, and the data length T_{length}. The data point interval Δt is equal to the simulation time step multiplied by the print step. In the FFT results, the frequency incremental step will be 1/T_{length}, and the maximum frequency will be 1/(2*Δt).

For example, if you take the FFT of a 1-kHz square waveform with a data length of 1 ms and a data point interval of 10 us, that is, T_{length} = 1 ms, and Δt = 10 us, the frequency incremental step will be: Δf = 1/T_{length} = 1 kHz. The maximum frequency will be: f_{max} = 1/(2*Δt) = 50 kHz.

### 8.2 Debugging

Some of the approaches in debugging a circuit is discussed in the following.

**Symptom:**
Simulation results show sudden changes (discontinuity) of inductor currents and capacitor voltages.

**Solution:**
This may be caused by the interruption of inductor current path and short-circuit of capacitor (or capacitor-voltage source) loops. Check the switch gating signals. If necessary, include overlap or dead time pulses to avoid open-circuit or shooting-through.

If an initial current is assigned to an inductor, initial switch positions should be set such that a path is provided for the current flow. Otherwise, the inductor current will be forced to start from zero.

**Symptom:**
Simulation waveforms look incorrect or inaccurate, or the waveform resolution is poor.

**Solution:**
This may be caused by two reasons. One is the time step. Since PSIM uses the fixed time step during
the entire simulation, one should make sure that the time step is sufficiently small. As a rule of thumb, the time step should be several tens times smaller than the switching period. Another reason is the problem of waveform display. One should make sure that the print step is not too big. To display all the data points, set the print step to 1.

8.3 Error/Warning Messages

The error and warning messages are listed in the following.

\[E-1\] Input format errors occurred in the simulation.

- It may be caused by one of the following:
  - Incorrect/Incomplete specifications
  - Wrong input for integers and character strings

Make sure that the PSIM library is not modified, and the PSIM simulator is up-to-date.

In the circuit file, character strings should be included between two apostrophes (like ‘test’). Also, make sure an integer is specified for an integer variable. The specification of a real number (like 3. instead of 3) for an integer will trigger the error message.

\[E-2\] Error message: The node of an element is floating.

This can also be caused by a poor connection in PSIM. When drawing a wire between two nodes, make sure that the wire is connected to the terminal of the element.

\[W-1\] Warning!!! The program failed to converge after 10 iterations when determining switch positions. The computation continues with the following switch positions: ... ...

This warning occurs when the program fails to converge when determining switching positions. Since the computation continues based on the switch positions at the end of the 10th iteration, results could be inaccurate. One should be cautious when analyzing the results.

There are many factors that cause this problem. The following measures can be taken to isolate and solve the problem:

- Check the circuit and make sure the circuit is correct.
- Check the switch gating signals.
- Connect small resistors/inductors in series with switches and voltage sources.

\[W-2\] Warning!!! The program did not reach the steady state after 60 cycles when performing the ac sweep.

This warning occurs when the program fails to reach the steady state after 60 cycles when performing the ac sweep. The cause of the problem could be that the system is poorly damped at that particular frequency or the signal amplitude is too small.

You may try the following to isolate and solve the problem:

- Run the time-domain simulation with the excitation source at that frequency and see if time-domain waveforms are oscillatory.
- Increase the excitation voltage amplitude for larger signal level, or
- Reduce the time step for better accuracy and resolution.
A
absolute value function block 182
ac analysis 4, 250, 251
air gap 80, 81, 82, 83
ammeter
  ac 228
  dc 228
axis setting 40, 152, 154
B
backup
  automatic 28
band energy 157
band-stop filter 179
batch run 26
battery
  lithium-ion 164, 165
B-H curve 31, 53, 54, 83
Boltzmann constant 158
C
C block 240, 241, 242
  simplified 242
cable 52
calculator 31, 46
capacitor 25, 49, 51, 54, 55, 81, 82, 99, 128, 266
Charging Control 221
circular buffer 209, 210
code generation
  automatic 1, 19, 24, 28, 242, 247
command-line 26
comparator 62, 65, 84, 184, 188, 214
Control 232
controller
  differentiator 176
digital PI 202
  modified PI 177
  proportional-integral (PI) 176
  single-pole 177
  Type-2 177
  Type-3 178
converter
  A/D 194
  D/A 194
  s2z 31
  unit 31
convolution block 210
core
  linear lossless 82
  saturable 31, 80, 83
CosiMate 2, 217
counter
  pulse width 193
  up/down 194
current transfer ratio 87
D
data array 211, 237
data point
  viewing 40, 152, 267
default variable 18, 34
device
  diode 133, 134
  IGBT 136, 138, 140, 141
  IGBT-Diode 136, 137
  MOSFET 66, 142, 144, 146
device database editor 4, 31, 133, 150
DIAC 57, 60
differentiator
  s-domain 176
  z-domain 202
Digital Control Module 196
diode 58
  loss calculation 134
  zener 60
Discharging Control 222
divider 180, 232
DLL block
  external 29, 240, 241, 243, 244
  general 243, 244
DSP Oscilloscope 31
dv/dt block 87
Dynamic Torque Limit Control 218, 219
E
Embedded Software Block 244
encoder
  absolute 131
  incremental 131
Excel 48
exponential function block 181
F
Fast Fourier Transform block 182
favorites 48
FFT
  analysis 266
Field Weakening Control 112
file
  help 28, 34, 35, 36, 244
  netlist 21, 23
  package 15
parameter 9, 21, 247, 249

filter
- band-pass 179, 189
- band-stop 179
- digital 204
- high-pass 179, 229
- low-pass 176, 179, 204, 214, 229
- second-order 179

flag
- load 5
- master/slave 92, 94, 95, 97, 98, 101, 103, 106, 108, 110, 127

save 5

flip-flop
- D 192
- J-K 192
- S-R 191

format
- ASCII text 39
- binary 27, 39

free run 5, 24

functional model 156, 159

G

gate
- AND 191
- logic 3, 191, 265
- NAND 191
- NOR 191
- NOT 191
- OR 191
- XOR 191

gating block 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 70, 71

gear box 89, 124, 127

H

HEV 2, 217
HEV Design Suite 217
HEV generator 17
HEV traction motor 17

hybrid electric vehicle 2

I

image
- secondary 33

Image Editor 16, 37

inductor 35, 49, 118, 266
- coupled 55, 76
- saturable 53, 54

initial value 56, 57, 173, 174, 175, 247

integrator
- s-domain
  - external resettable 174
  - internal resettable 174

z-domain
- external resettable 201
- internal resettable 201

interface
- between power and control circuits 232
- interface block 128
- control-power 232, 265
- mechanical-electrical 89, 124, 127

J

JMAG 1, 116
JMAG-RT 1, 120, 121

L

label 14, 16, 34, 47

leakage flux 74, 80, 81, 99

LED 59

library
- adding new DLL element 35
- adding new subcircuit element 34
- edit 16, 32, 33, 35, 36

library browser 14, 17, 214

light intensity 157

limiter
- gradient (dv/dt) 185
- lower 185
- lower/upper 185
- range 185
- upper 185

LOG 42, 181
LOG10 42, 181, 250, 252

logic gate 191

lookup table
- 2-D 237

loss calculation 133

- diode 135
- IGBT 138, 141, 149
- MOSFET 146

M

machine
- brushless dc 96, 98, 132
- dc 95, 96
- induction 89, 91, 93, 128
- nonlinear induction 91
- nonlinear permanent magnet synchronous 106
- nonlinear switched reluctance 110
- permanent magnet synchronous 103, 106
- squirrel-cage induction 91, 92, 93
- switched reluctance 108
- synchronous (external excitation) 101
- wound-rotor induction 91, 92, 93, 94

MagCoupler 117

MagCoupler block 116, 117, 118, 119
MagCoupler Module 116, 119, 120, 124
MagCoupler-DL block 116
MagCoupler-RT Module 120, 124
magnetic elements 31, 80, 83
math function block 237
Matlab/Simulink 1, 23, 31, 213, 214
maximum power 156
maximum/minimum function block 183
Maximum-Torque-Per-Ampere Control 111
mechanical coupling block 124, 127
mechanical load
  constant-power 124
  constant-speed 125
  constant-torque 124
  externally-controlled 126
  general-type 126
mechanical load model 1, 89, 124, 128
memory read block 209, 210
message
  error 28, 241, 267
  warning 3, 23, 28, 250, 267
meter
  3-phase VAR 230
  VA-power factor 228
  VAR 228, 230
monostable 193
Motor Drive Module 1, 89, 124
multiplexer 188
multiplier 3, 180
multi-rate sampling system 212

N
node
  link 213, 214
  SLINK 23, 214
nonlinear element 56, 57
  conductance-type 56
  conductance-type with additional input 56
  resistance-type 56
  resistance-type with additional input 56

O
operational amplifier
  ideal 84
  non-ideal 85
optocoupler 86

P
Parameter Tool 31, 249
password 15
  disable 27
  enter 26
PHEV 17
physical model 158
pitch angle 162
port
  bi-directional 18, 19
  input signal 18, 182
  output signal 18
  subcircuit 20
power coefficient 162, 163
power function block 181
print step 5, 266, 267
probe 228
  ac sweep 251
  ac sweep (loop) 250
  current 17, 118, 119, 130, 228
  voltage 228
propagation delay 187, 265
proportional-integral controller 176
Pulse 193
PWM
  space vector 190

Q
quantization block 1, 207

R
reference direction
  of mechanical system 90, 91, 96, 124, 127, 129, 130
Regeneration Control 223
relay 88
resistor 9, 18, 30, 32, 49, 53, 81, 82, 83, 228, 232, 247, 253, 262, 267
resolver 130, 131, 132
rheostat 53
root-mean-square function block 181
round-off block 187
rubber band 27
runtime graph 24, 27, 49, 52

S
sampling/hold block 186
scope
  current 5, 16, 24, 25, 231, 232
  voltage 5, 24, 231
sensor
  current 228
  hall effect 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 132
  position 89, 97, 98, 99, 100, 116, 120, 124, 130, 131, 132
  speed 129, 130, 214
  torque 129, 130
  voltage 228, 232, 265
shunt regulator 86
sign function block 42, 182
SimCoder 2, 19, 24, 28, 247
SimCoupler Module 4, 23, 31, 213, 214
simulation control 4, 23, 24
solar cell 157
source 255
  constant 255
  current-controlled current 261
  current-controlled voltage 118, 261, 262
dc 61, 62, 256
  math function 261
  nonlinear voltage-controlled 263
  piecewise linear 255
random 261
sawtooth 258
sinusoidal 256, 257
square wave 186
  square-wave 257
step 259
triangular 258
  voltage-controlled current 118, 261
  voltage-controlled voltage 118, 261
Space 190
square waveform block 186
square-root function block 181
stack 211
subcircuit 15, 18, 19, 21, 22
  connecting 20
  creating
    in the main circuit 19
    in the subcircuit 19
image 22
summer 180
sweep
  ac 250, 251, 252, 267
  parameter 253
switch
  bi-directional 57, 69, 70, 225
  DIAC 57, 60
  linear 57, 63, 64, 65
  self-commutated 57, 64, 67, 68
  thyristor 57, 61, 226
  transistor 57, 136, 138, 140, 141, 142, 144, 146, 147
  TRIAC 57, 61
switch controller 3, 61, 63, 66, 67, 225
  alpha 61, 71, 72, 73, 74, 226
  on-off 62, 65, 225
  PWM lookup table 74, 227
switch module
  single-phase 71
T
THD block 189
Thermal Module 133, 134
TI F28335 8
time 242, 255
  idle 28
print 5
  total 5, 23, 26
time delay block 187, 188, 206, 265
time step 5, 23, 26, 87, 116, 117, 214, 215, 242, 265
tip speed ratio 163
TL431 86
toolbar 14, 17, 27, 30, 46
Torque Control 217
transconductance 66, 143, 146, 148
transfer function block
  s-domain 173
  z-domain 200
transformation 111, 217, 233
  abc-alpha/beta 235
  abc-dq 111, 112, 233
  alpha/beta-dq 236
  Cartesian-Polar 236
transformer 3, 74
  ideal 74
  saturation 79
  single-phase 75
  three-phase 76
transistor
  BJT (npn) 57, 62
  BJT (pnp) 57
  GTO 57, 69
  IGBT 57
  MOSFET (n-channel) 57
  MOSFET (p-channel) 57, 64
trapezoidal waveform block 186
trigonometric function 182
U
unit delay block 188, 206
V
variable
  default 18, 19, 21, 34
  passing 21
  runtime 16, 24
voltmeter
  ac 228
  dc 228
W
wattmeter 228, 229, 230
  3-phase 230
wind turbine 162
wire 14, 16, 19, 29, 267
Z
zero-order hold 1, 186, 196, 199, 212, 243